

The Boke  
of Saint . . .  
Albans by . . .  
Dame Juliana  
Berners: 1486



Oak Knoll 10/88

**52. (BLADES, WILLIAM) BERNERS, JULIANA. THE BOKE OF SAINT ALBANS BY DAME JULIANA BERNERS CONTAINING TREATISES ON HAWKING, HUNTING, AND COTE ARMOUR: PRINTED AT SAINT ALBANS BY THE SCHOOLMASTER-PRINTER IN 1486. Reproduced in Facsimile. With an Introduction by William Blades. London: Elliot Stock, 1881, small 4to., full parchment covered boards, top edge cut, others uncut. 32 pages followed by the lengthy facsimile. \$125.00**

First printing of this facsimile with the introduction by Blades. (Blades Cat. no.27). Blades comments on the "authorship, typography, bibliographical aspects and subject matter of the work, followed by a vocabulary of the chief words in which peculiarity of spelling or dialect are noticeable." With the armorial bookplate of Woolrych and pencil notes referring to the text in which the Audley Arms are discussed. Some other pencil notes as well. Covers soiled and chipped around edges.

**53. (BLADES, WILLIAM) BERNERS, JULIANA. THE BOKE OF SAINT ALBANS BY DAME JULIANA BERNERS CONTAINING TREATISES ON HAWKING, HUNTING, AND COTE ARMOUR: PRINTED AT SAINT ALBANS BY THE SCHOOLMASTER-PRINTER IN 1486. Reproduced in Facsimile. With an Introduction by William Blades. London: Elliot Stock, n.d. (1901), small 4to. limp paper wrappers. 32 pages followed by the lengthy facsimile. \$65.00**

Reprint of the first printing of this facsimile with the introduction by Blades originally done in 1881. (Blades Cat. no.27). Blades comments on the "authorship, typography, bibliographical aspects and subject matter of the work, followed by a vocabulary of the chief words in which peculiarity of spelling or dialect are noticeable." Covers soiled with a spot on the front cover.



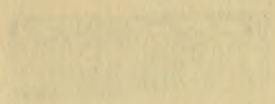
JOHN A. SEAVERNS



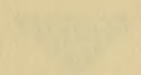


The Boke of Saint Albans





The Court of Appeal



The  
Boke of Saint Albans

BY  
DAME JULIANA BERNERS

CONTAINING  
TREATISES ON HAWKING, HUNTING,  
AND COTE ARMOUR:

PRINTED AT SAINT ALBANS BY THE SCHOOLMASTER-PRINTER IN 1486

REPRODUCED IN FACSIMILE

With an Introduction by

WILLIAM BLADES

*AUTHOR OF "THE LIFE AND TYPOGRAPHY OF WILLIAM CAXTON"*

LONDON  
ELLIOT STOCK, PATERNOSTER ROW, E.C.







## Introduction.



SEVERAL independent printing presses were established in England before the close of the fifteenth century; and from them issued numerous books which are invaluable to all students of antiquity from the light they throw upon the social habits and literary progress of our nation. Of these it may safely be said that not one exceeds in interest that work of an unknown typographer, which is here presented in facsimile, and which, from the town in which it was compiled, as well as printed, is known to all bibliographers as "The Book of St. Albans." This work has always been a favourite, partly because our feelings are appealed to in favour of the writer who for centuries has taken rank as England's earliest poets, and is still, in all our Biographical Dictionaries, reckoned among "noble authors;" and partly because we love mysteries, and a mystery has always enshrouded the nameless printer. The subjects, too, so curiously alliterative—Hawking, Hunting, and Heraldry, have an enticing and antique flavour about them, being just those with which, at that period, every man claiming to be "gentle" was expected to be familiar; while ignorance of their laws and language was to confess himself a "churl."

As to the language and orthography of the book, it is a never-failing source of interest, being quite different from any other printed work of the fifteenth century, except the St. Albans' Chronicle from the same press. Among bibliographers it ranks as "*rarissimus*," the known copies being so few that they might probably be counted on the fingers of one hand.

Looking at the book, then, all round, it will be a convenient plan to consider these subjects separately, and to treat the volume in its four aspects of Authorship, Typography and Bibliography, Subject-matter, and Philology.





## CHAPTER I.

### Authorship.



HISTORIANS and Biographers, together with Librarians and Bookfellers, have a natural antipathy to anonymous books; and, wherever they can, are willing to accept the smallest amount of evidence as proof of paternity. It saves much trouble and avoids numerous errors in cataloguing, when a recognized name can be associated with an anonymous work. From this tendency a bad habit has arisen of attributing to particular writers books concerning which the evidence of authorship is doubtful, if not altogether untrustworthy.

In this very book we have a striking instance of such erroneous attribution. The three treatises, of which the book is made up, are quite distinct, and to a portion only of one of these is there any author's name attached. Yet that name, "Dam Julyans Barnes," altered by degrees to "Dame Juliana Berners," is now universally received as the name of the authoreis of the whole volume. With even less show of reason she is credited with the authorship of a "Treatise on Fishing" for which there is not the shadow of evidence, that treatise having been added ten years later by Wynken de Worde, who, when reprinting the Book of St. Albans, thought that the subject of Fishing would complete the work as a Gentleman's Vade Mecum.

There are really four distinct tracts in the Book of St. Albans, although the two last being on Heraldry are generally counted as one.

The first is on Hawking; to this no name of the author is attached, but it has a prologue which no one acquainted with the other writings of the printer can doubt to be his. Of this we shall have more to say anon.

The second tractate is on Hunting: it is specially associated with the name of Dame Juliana Berners, and will require a more extended elucidation than the others.

Here the evidence of authorship is as good as for most pieces of fifteenth-century production—a period at which literary rights did not exist, and when the scribe, if at all acquainted with the subject upon which the book he was copying treated, did not scruple to interpolate his own ideas, and that without any egotistical vanity, but merely from a feeling that all books being written for the good of men, and not from vanity in the author, it was a duty to improve them where possible. But as improvement mostly meant the addition of something on the same subject taken from another manuscript, we have the constant occurrence of one MS. being a compilation of two or three others, and yet appearing under the name of the last compiler.

In this treatise on Hunting we have the express statement at the end of the twenty-fourth page—"Explicit Dam Julyans Barnes." This might certainly apply to the transcription only, but, when taken with Wynken de Worde's version, the probability is, that the lady compiled as well as wrote it. In the reprint by Wynken de Worde, only ten years later than the original, he varies the colophon thus:—"¶ Explicit dame Julyans Bernes doctryne in her boke of huntynge," the whole reprint ending "Enprynted at westmestre by Wynkyn the Worde the yere of thyncarnacōn of our lorde. M. CCCC. lxxxvj." So that he, a contemporary, evidently believed her to be the authoress. Later authorities attributed the whole book to her pen, but as they were in possession of no more evidence than we now are, and probably not so much, we should attach no weight to such statements, which were founded simply on a vivid imagination.

But what is known of the lady who is admitted to have compiled the twenty-four pages on Hunting? Who was Dame Julians Barnes? Here, unless a sentimental and inventive sympathy be employed to throw an artificial light upon the darkness, we are in total ignorance. A biography of her has certainly been written, and all our Dictionaries and Encyclopædias devote a page or two to her history, which, in 1810, under Haslewood's nurture, attained its full development. Even so far back as 1549, or nearly a century after her supposed death, the learned Bale, who wrote an account of all our English celebrities, allows his gallantry to bedeck her memory with garments fine. "Fœmina illustris!" he exclaims, "corporis et animi dotibus abundans ac forma elegancia spectabilis" (An illustrious lady! abundantly gifted, both in body and mind, and charming in the elegance of her mien). Considering that the name of the lady is the whole of the text upon which Bale had to build, this is by no means a bad specimen of imaginative biography, and became a good foundation for future commentators. The story, however, fared rather badly at first; for Holinshed, in 1577, while echoing Bale very exactly, is made, by a curious error of the printer, who mistook the letters *rn* for *m*, to call the authoress Julyan Bemmes; while Baker in his Chronicles, too careless even to refer to the original text, adds another blunder to the story, and, thinking that Julyan must be a man's name, dubs the authoress "a gentleman of excellent gifts, who wrote certain treatises of Hawking and Hunting."

Chauncy, in 1700 (History of Hertfordshire), restored her sex to the lady, and then set to work upon making a family history for her. His first discovery was that, being a "Dame," she was of noble blood. Finding also that the family name of Lord Berners was, in olden time, spelt occasionally Barnes, he soon supplied a father for our authoress, in the person of Sir James Berners. And so the game of making history went on merrily up to the time of Joseph Haslewood, who, in 1810, reprinted Wynken de Worde's

edition of the Book of St. Albans, and supplied a full-blown biography of the authoress, giving particulars of her birth and education, the occupations of her youthful days, and a most imposing pedigree. Let us quote Haslewood's own words: "Julyans, or Juliana, Barnes, otherwife Berners, who has been generally designated as the authoress of the present volume, is supposed to have been born, towards the latter end of the fourteenth century, at Roding-Berners, in the county of Essex. The received report is that she was the daughter of Sir James Berners, whose son was created Baron Berners, temp. Henry IV., and that she once held the situation of Prioress of Sopwell Nunnery, in Hertfordshire." He then attributes to her the authorship of all four works in the Book of St. Albans. The difficulty of accounting for a lady so placed writing upon such subjects, is cleverly, if not satisfactorily settled by assuming that she passed her teens at court, partaking of the amusements of the field, and writing for her own use a commonplace book on various subjects. Then retiring through disappointment (doubtless a love affair) to a cloister, her rank raised her to the position of prioress. There in her seclusion, writing amidst the solitude of listless hours and vain regrets, she verified the general rules of sport from her own pleasant recollection, and from the diaries of her youthful happiness, which fortunately she had preserved. If we remember the mania which seized all classes for diary-keeping at the beginning of this century, when Haslewood wrote this, it will deepen our sense of humour to note that he attributes private diary-keeping to a young lady who lived *ante* 1450.

But enough of such sham biography; let us return to facts.

The word "Dame" did not in the fifteenth century, as it does now, imply any connection with a titled family, it meant simply Mistress or Mrs. Chaucer speaks of Dame Partlet in this sense; and had the Dame Julyans Barnes of the fifteenth century lived now, she would have been just "Mrs. Barnes."

Similarity of name in history, like similarity of sound in philology.

is a will-o'-the-wisp which has led many a writer into a bog. Allowing that Lord Berners' name was sometimes spelt Barnes, is that sufficient reason for making our authorefs a member of his family? I think not.

That the greater portion of the book on Hunting was compiled by Mistrefs Barnes, is probably correct,\* and had she written much more, and produced even an original work on the subject, she would not have stood alone, even at that early period, as an authorefs. Cryftine de Pifan, two of whose works were printed by Caxton, was contemporary with Julians Barnes, and left not only numerous original writings behind her—one of which was upon the Art of War—but left her mark, and that no mean nor ignoble one, upon the political course and moral development of her countrymen. But Dame Julyans' work upon Hunting is certainly not original, as indeed very few works upon any subject were at that period. This is evident from a glance at the text and the grouping of the subjects. It begins with distinguishing the varieties of beasts and their ages; the proper names by which to designate the beasts, singly and together; on hunting and dressing a Roe, a Boar, a Hare; of flaying; of the horns of a Roebuck; of the Hart; of the seasons; of the Hare. Then follows, from another source, an interpolation of a discourse between a Master of the Hunt and his man, going over portions of the same ground again; and this ended, we get back again to the original MS. and the dismemberment of various beasts. All through, with the exception of the interpolated conversation, the text is addressed to "My deare childe." Thus we read—"Do so, my child;" "Think what I say, my son;" "My lief childer;" "Say, child, where you go? my dame taught you so." Evidently that portion was originally written for a mother to use

\* Taking Berners and Barnes to be the same word, it is curious to note—in connection with the work attributed to Dame Juliana, viz., *The Book of Hunting*—that the masters of that sport employed men called *Berners*, to be ready with relays of horses and to feed the hounds.—See Halliwell's "Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words."

as a school-book, by which her son would learn to read, and, at the same time, become familiar with the terms of venery.

In the Bodleian Library is a small manuscript on the Terms of the Chase, the beginning of which is:—

“Mi dere fones, where ye fare, be frith or by fell,  
Take good hede in his tyme how Triffram wol tell.”

This manuscript was probably copied by some youth as a school-exercise, which would account for the following odd colophon—  
“Explicit, expliceat, ludere scriptor eat.”

Compare the above with the opening stanza of the verses we attribute to Mistress Barnes:—

“Wheresoever ye fare, by frith or by fell,\*  
My dear child, take heed how Triffram doth you tell.” †

The rest of the Oxford MS. is in similar accord with the print, but nowhere in it is there a word about Mistress Barnes.

The words “Explicit Dam Julyans Barnes” have been considered to prove that the lady was alive when the book was printed. If, however, Sir James Berners were her father, of which there is no evidence, she must have been close upon a hundred years old in 1486, as he died in 1390. But this is importing a needless difficulty into the theory, which is not rendered more probable by making the authoress and printer contemporary.

It may here be as well to say a few words about Sopwell Nunnery, over which, without a particle of evidence, our authoress is supposed to have presided. Sopwell Nunnery, Hertfordshire, was founded about 1140, under the rule of St. Benedict, and subject to the Abbot of St. Albans, from which it was not far

\* “By frith or by fell” = by forest or by plain; but see Halliwell’s Dictionary.

† Sir Triffram, the well-known knight of the Round Table, was a mighty hunter, and the great authority upon all subjects connected with the chase. Popular belief attributed to him the origin of all the special terms used in hunting, and his name was invoked to give authority to any statement upon this subject, just as in a later century the arithmetical rules of Cocker give rise to the popular phrase—“According to Cocker.”



distant. The rule of life among the inmates was very severe, and at the first the nuns were enclosed under locks and bolts, made additionally sure by the seal, on the door, of the Abbot for the time being (Chauncy's History, p. 466). How long this lasted, and how the nuns liked it, history faith not; but, in 1338, a re-organisation had become imperative, and the Abbot of St. Albans, among other instructions, ordered that no nun should lodge out of the house, and no guest within it (Newcome, p. 468). There does not seem much scope left here for the Priorefs to take an active part in field sports, though a hundred and fifty years later, which was about the period of our "Dame," many relaxations of the strict rules may have become common. But, then, we have apparently accurate lists of all the Prioreffes of Sopwell in the fifteenth century, and the name of Juliana Barnes does not appear at all in them. The known dates are these:—In 1416, Matilda de Flamstede was Priorefs. Four years before her death, which was in 1430, she was succeeded by Letitia Wyttenham. The next whose name is known was Joan Chapell; the date of her appointment is not recorded, but as she was set aside in 1480 on account of her age, she had probably occupied the position for many years. In 1480, Elizabeth Webb succeeded Joan Chapell.

What is really known of the Dame is almost nothing, and may be summed up in the following few words. She probably lived at the beginning of the fifteenth century, and she possibly compiled from existing MSS. some rhymes on Hunting.

There is still the authorship of the other parts of the book to determine, and if similarity of wording and phraseology may be taken as evidence, they were all from one pen.

At the end of the book on Heraldry the printer has put the following—"Here endeth the book of Blasing of Arms translated and compiled together at Seynt Albons." Here we have the printer's own statement as to the origin of his text, and doubtless this, as well as the treatise on Hawking, were made up or "compiled" from more

than one manuscript in French. Haslewood gives a list of such as are in the British Museum, in several of which portions of the printed work are contained. Works on Hunting and Hawking were not uncommon in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, and are still found in all large collections of manuscripts. There were several in the libraries of the Dukes of Burgundy in the fifteenth century, and many are still extant in the national collections of England and France.

The other tractates in the volume have an origin very similar to that of the Book of Hunting. The Book of Hawking is an evident compilation from several manuscripts, which accounts perhaps for its deficiency in arrangement and want of continuity. The Book of Coat Armour also has two distinct sources in contemporary works, one of which was the "De Officio Militari" of Nicholas Upton. From this the schoolmaster copied Book IV. almost word for word, supplementing it from "The Book of the Lineage of Coat Armour," as stated already. The only other literary work which can be attributed to our printer is the extensive compilation known as the St. Albans' Chronicle or the *Fructus Temporum*. But neither in the Chronicle, where he simply combined two histories into one, nor in the Book of St. Albans, which is also a compilation, does the schoolmaster show any literary ability above the average of scholars of his period.

As specimens of the schoolmaster's powers of composition we annex the following, the originals of which can be seen in the ensuing facsimile pages:—

### Prologue to the Book of Hawking.

"In so much that gentlemen and honest persons have great delight in Hawking, and desire to have the manner to take hawks: and also how and in what wise they should guide them ordinally: and to know the gentle terms in communing of their hawks: and to understand their sicknesses and infirmities, and to know medicines for them according, and the many notable terms that be used in hawking

both of their hawks and of the fowls that their hawks shall flay. Therefore this book following in a due form shows very knowledge of such pleasure to gentlemen and persons disposed to see it."

### Prologue to Mistress Barnes' Compilation on Hunting.

"Likewise, as in the Book of Hawking aforesaid are written and noted the terms of pleasure belonging to gentlemen having delight therein, in the same manner this book following sheweth to such gentle persons the manner of Hunting for all manner of beasts, whether they be beasts of Venery, or of Chace, or Rascal. And also it sheweth all the terms convenient as well to the hounds as to the beasts aforesaid. And in certain there be many diverse of them as it is declared in the book following."

### Prologue to the Book of Coat Armour.

"Here in this book following is determined the lineage of Coat Armours: and how gentlemen shall be known from ungentle men, and how bondage began first in angel and after succeeded in man kind, as it is here showed in process, both in the childer of Adam and also of Noe, and how Noe divided the world in three parts to his three sons. Also there be showed the nine colours in Arms figured by the nine orders of Angels, and it is showed by the foresaid colours which be worthy and which be royal; and of regalities which be noble and which be excellent. And there be here the vertues of Chivalry, and many other notable and famous things, to the pleasure of noble persons shall be showed, as the works following witness, whosoever liketh to see them and read them, which were too long now to rehearse. And after these notable things aforesaid followeth the Blasing of all manner Arms in Latin, French, and English."

So wrote the schoolmaster. Let us now see what kind of book this is typographically.



## CHAPTER II.

### Typography and Bibliography.



LD books must be loved, and their idiosyncrasies carefully studied, before they will yield up *all* their treasures; that done, the observant lover will obtain possession of both soul and body; he may revel in the intellectual feast provided by the author, or he may study the material and mechanical features of the books as represented by the peculiarities of paper and the habits and customs of the various printers. Then, by grouping these as a botanist does his flowers, according to their organisation into classes, orders, genera, and species, he may extract from his volumes true replies to questions which otherwise would remain hidden for ever. So true is the dictum, "The Mind it is which sees, and not the Eye alone."

Many bibliophiles, however, of education and taste have been positively blind when outside the circle of their own particular studies. So it was with the Rev. Dr. M'Neille, a well-known critic and book-collector of sixty years ago. When addressing Dr. Dibdin he wrote thus of "The Book of St. Albans"—"This book is itself uselefs, and only a *bon morceau* for the quizzical collector." With such feelings towards one of the most curious works which this country produced during the infancy of the printing press, it was simply impossible that the interest of its pages should be revealed to him; and however rich in divinity and *editiones principes* of the classics the library of the

worthy doctor may have been, it is evident that our Book of St. Albans could never have been aught but an alien on *his* book-shelves.

The works printed by William Caxton were almost without exception in the English tongue, while the contemporary presses of Oxford, St. Albans, and Machlinia were nearly all in Latin. Of the eight books at present known to have been printed at St. Albans, the only two in English were the "Fruetus Temporum" and the work under review. The "Fruetus" or St. Albans' Chronicle is the same as that printed two years previously by Caxton, with the addition of certain ecclesiastical events and Papal chronology, probably added by the printer himself to please the monks.

The Book of St. Albans' and the St. Albans' Chronicle make a class of themselves; but as it is impossible to understand their position without a glance at the other works from the same press, we will give a tabulated description of the whole eight.

BOOKS PRINTED AT ST. ALBANS IN FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

	Title of Book.	Language.	Size.	Date of Printing.	No. of Printed Leaves.	Type	Size of Printed Page.	Signatures.	Printed Initials.	Ink.	Device.	Woodcuts.	Lines in Page.
1	Augustini Dacti elegancie	Latin	4to	n. d.	18	1	5 $\frac{3}{4}$ × 3 $\frac{1}{2}$	none	none	black	none	none	36
2	Laur: de Saona Rhetorica nova	Latin	4to	1480	81	2-1	5 $\frac{3}{4}$ × 3 $\frac{1}{2}$	signed	none	black	none	none	24
3	Alberti quest. de modo Significandi.	Latin	4to	1480	46	3-1	5 $\frac{3}{4}$ × 3 $\frac{1}{2}$	signed	none	black	none	none	32
4	Joan: Canonici Quest. sup. Phys. Arist.	Latin	fol.	1481	174	3	8 × 5	signed	none	black	none	none	44
5	Exempla sacre scripture	Latin	4to	1481	83	3	5 $\frac{3}{4}$ × 3 $\frac{1}{2}$	signed	none	black	none	none	32
6	Ant. Andreae super Logica Aristotelis	Latin	4to	1482	335	3	5 $\frac{3}{4}$ × 3 $\frac{1}{2}$	signed	none	black	none	none	32
7	Chronicles of England	Engl.	fol.	1483?	295	2	8 × 5	every leaf signed	yes	black & red	with	yes	32
8	The Book of St. Albans	Engl.	fol.	1486	88	2-4	8 × 5	signed	yes	black & red & red	with	yes	32

But who was the printer? What was his name? Was he associated with the great Abbey? and is there any internal or external evidence in his works to connect him with any other printer or any other town?

The only notice we have of the printer is an accidental one by Wynken de Worde, who, in reprinting the St. Albans' Chronicle, says

in the colophon, "Here endith this present Chronicle . . . compiled in a book and also enprinted by our sometime Schoolmaster of St. Alban." He was a schoolmaster, then, and this will account for the nature of his early works, all scholastic and all in Latin. Not till the end of his typographical career did he realize the fact that the printing-press, instead of being the hobby of a few learned men, was the educator of the people, the whole nation; and then he gave his countrymen what they wanted—a history of their own country and a book upon the whole (secular) duty of the gentleman, as then understood.

The name of the schoolmaster-printer is quite unknown. No notice of him is found in the records of the Abbey, nor does he appear in any contemporary document. Yet here, as in Mistress Barnes's case, imagination has come to the rescue and a legendary name has been provided.

Finding that the Prologue to the Book of Hawking began with the words, "*Infomuch* as gentle men and honest persons have great delight in Hawking;" finding also that the St. Alban's Chronicle from the same press began thus: "*Infomuch* as it is necessary;" and bearing in mind that certain old authors had veiled *their* names in the first words of their works, Dr. Chauncy arrived at the sagacious conclusion that the St. Alban's printer wished to veil *his* name, which really was "Infomuch." The joke, for it almost seems like one, does not bear even the scrutiny which itself invites, for although the schoolmaster uses the words in two other places, in neither case are they at the beginning of a chapter.\* It should be added that in this the worthy historian of Hertfordshire only followed the lead of both Bale and Pits.

Was he connected with the Abbey? I think not. There is not a word to suggest such a connection, although we may take it for granted that the Abbot and his fraternity could not have frowned upon

\* On sig. a j recto of "Cote Armour" is "*Infomuch* as all gentleness comes of God;" and upon sig. b iij verso is "*Infomuch* that in the fifth quadrat," &c. The use of the word in these cases could have no veiled meaning, and it was probably only a peculiarity of diction which had become a habit with the schoolmaster.

the printer, or he would never have established himself. His imprints all mention the town of St. Albans, but never the Abbey, and his position was probably similar to that of Caxton, who was simply a tenant of the Abbot of Westminster, but, so far as is known, nothing more.

Was he connected with Caxton and the Westminster prefs? Without a shadow of doubt I say, No! Mr. E. Scott, of the MS. department in the British Museum, has indeed strung together a number of surmises to show that the Schoolmaster was employed by Caxton, and that all the books without date or place hitherto attributed to Westminster were really printed at St. Albans. But internal evidence is against any such gratuitous assumption. There is nothing in common between the two printers in any of their habits or customs except the possession of Caxton's No. 3 type. This is the only one of Caxton's types used outside his own office (for W. de Worde, his successor in house and business, must not be regarded as a separate printer). Caxton employed it from his arrival in England in 1477 till 1484, when it makes its last appearance in the headings of "Æsop," the "Order of Chivalry," and "The Golden Legend." In 1485 Caxton obtained a new fount, similar in shape and character, and from that time the old No. 3 disappears to make way for the new and smaller type No. 5. This being more suited to the taste of the day, we find the larger and worn fount passing over to the country prefs of St. Albans, where the Schoolmaster first uses it in 1486, being the identical year in which its successor appears in Caxton's "Royal Book." We may here observe that after the stoppage of the St. Albans' Prefs the same fount finds its way back again and is seen in W. de Worde's reprint, in 1496-97, of the two English St. Albans books. But the discovery of a copy of Caxton's Boethius in the old Grammar School at St. Albans, and the numerous fragments of old books extracted from its covers, are quoted as confirming the idea. Yet the book itself and all these fragments were from Westminster, not a single one being from a known St. Albans book, and they included the Caxton "Chronicles," 1480, the "Dictes," 1477, and the

still earlier "Life of Jafon;" so that we had better at once remove the whole Westminster press, dated and undated, to St. Albans, if such an argument is to have any force. These fragments, indeed, can only point to the fact that the copy of Boethius was bound in the printing office, as was commonly the case with the books from Caxton's press.

Again, Mr. Scott draws attention to the fact that a page of the St. Albans' Book, 1486, has been copied by a contemporary writer on to the blank leaves of one of Caxton's earliest books. 'Tis true; but this copying of part of one book into another, printed ten years before, has no typographical bearing whatever. Lastly, the name Caxton appears in an old St. Albans' Register of the early part of the fifteenth century. But this, again, means positively nothing. Caxton's name was not at all uncommon; there were Caxtons or Caxtons in nearly every English county, and I have quite a long list of them.

It is highly probable that Caxton, while at Westminster, in the van of all the literature of his day, would have communications of some sort with the important town of St. Albans; but that the two printers assisted one another in the production of books, is, so far as any evidence goes, a pure fiction.

Let us now glance at the bibliographical aspect of the book.

The work itself has no title. It is difficult in our time, accustomed as we are to "teeming millions" of books, each with its own title-page, to conceive a period when the press sent out works without even the shadow of a title-page. Before the invention of printing, the author simply headed his first page with the name of the work, as "Here begins the Confessio Amantis," or "Hic incipit Parvus Catho," and, without preface or more ado, the text commenced. Sometimes even this little notification was omitted, and, as in Caxton's "Jafon," "The Chefs Book," "Tulle," and many other fifteenth-century books, the subject of the work had to be learned by reading the text. So it is with the book now under review; it comprises four distinct works, but to one only is there any heading, and that has the bare line "Incipit liber armorum."



The first, "The Book of Hawking," starts straight off—"This is the manner to keep Hawks," and occupies three signatures, **a**, **b**, and **c**, of eight leaves each, and fig. **D**, which has but four leaves, on purpose that this portion might be complete alone, if so desired. The same idea controlled the arrangement of "The Book of Hunting," which, beginning on fig. **e** **j**, ends with Dame Juliana's "Explicit" on the recto of fig. **f** **iii**. This left the last seven pages of the quaternion to be filled up. Now it was a common practice, both with the scribes and with the early printers, when they got to the end of their text and found that a page or two of blank paper was left, to occupy the blank pages with such common household aphorisms or popular rhymes as came easily to the memory, or were at hand in some other book. So here the schoolmaster-printer fills up his vacant pages with a number of odd sentences and rhymes, most of which occur over and over again in numerous manuscripts of early poetry. Among others we notice the well-known:—

" Arise erly,  
ferue God deuouteli,  
and the world befily."  
&c.                      &c.

Also the folks proverb:—

" Too wyues in oon hous,  
Too cattys and oon mous,  
Too dogges and oon boon,  
Theis shall neū accorde oon."

Then the list of proper terms to be used by gentlemen and those curious in their speech is of very common occurrence:—

" An herde of Hertis  
An herde of all mañ dere  
A pride of Lionys  
A fleuth of Beeris."  
&c.                      &c.

This was evidently copied from some MS., and ends with "¶ Explicit," and nothing more. On the next page we have the proper terms for carving or dismembering beasts, fowls, and fishes, followed on the last leaf by a list of bishoprics and provinces.

Having thus filled up all his leaves, the printer begins his third subject on a fresh signature, and introduces the "Liber Armorum" with the Preface (already printed). A long work on the "Blasing of Arms" follows, beginning on fig. 1 j, and ending on fig. f 10.

This is extremely interesting, both in matter and in the very rude woodcut representations of armorial bearings with which the text is profusely illustrated. Except in one or two cases of uncommon tints, these are all colour-printed, as are the initials to paragraphs. In the Grenville copy, the pressman having forgotten to roll the "forme," the initials all appear in that semi-tinted state which would be the natural result of such an omission. We notice, too, that where the coats of arms require, say, three colours on one page, then the initials are also in three colours; but if only one colour is required for the arms, only one colour, and that the same, is used for the initials. Occasionally, where a peculiar colour was necessary, a brush was used to insert that tint by hand.

In workmanship the St. Albans printer, especially in the English books, is much inferior to the contemporary issue from the Westminster press. The types are worse, the arrangement worse, the presswork worse, and the ink worse. From this point of view alone, the theory that he would print for Caxton so much better than he did for himself, is not worth serious consideration.

The Book of St. Albans went through many editions, particulars of which are difficult to obtain.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1486. The Booke of St. Albans (Brit. Mus.).  | 15—. By W. Copland. "In Lothebury"  |
| 149—. By Wynken de Worde "at the sygne<br>of the Sonne."   | 4to.  |
| 1496. By Wynken de Worde (Brit. Mus.).   | 15—. By W. Copland. "In faynt Martyns<br>parish in the Vinetre upon the three<br>crane wharfe."                     |
| 15—. By W. Powell. "Imprinted at London<br>in Fletestrete at the sygne of George<br>next to faynt Dunston's Church by<br>Wyllyam Powell.                     | 1548? By W. Copland. "Imprynted at<br>London in the Vyentre vppon the<br>thre Craned Wharfe by Wyllyam<br>Copland." |
| 15—. By W. Copland. "Imprinted at<br>London in Flete Street at the sygne<br>of the Rose Garlande by Wylliam<br>Copland for Richard Tottell"<br>(Brit. Mus.). | 1550. By W. Powell. "Hawkynge Hun-<br>tynge and Fishyng." 8vo. Lon-<br>don.   |
|  | 1551? By Abraham Vele.  |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>15—. By Henry Tab. "Imprynted at London in Paul's chyrch yarde by me Hēry Tab" (Brit. Mus.).</p> <p>15—. By J. Waley. "Imprinted at London in Foster laen by Johñ Waley" 4to.</p> <p>1561. By Copland. In this year Copland was fined for "a book of Hawkyng, Huntynge, and fysshynge cōtrary to the orders of this howse—iiij d" (Herbert, p. 367).</p> <p>1586. By E. Alde. 4to. (Bib. Dec.).</p> <p>1590. By John Wolfe "at the fygne of the Gunne."</p> <p>1595. By H. Lownes. "The Gentleman's Academie or the Booke of St. Albans * * * Compiled by Juliana Barnes in the year from the incarnation of Christ 1486. And now reduced into a better method by</p> | <p>G. M. (Gervase Markham). London. 4to. (Brit. Mus.).</p> <p>1596. By Wolffe.</p> <p>1596. By Illip. "Hawking Hunting Fowling and Fishing," by Adam Illip. 4to.</p> <p>1596. By E. Alde. "Hawking Hunting Fowling and Fishing," by Edward Alde.</p> <p>1600. By Wolffe.</p> <p>1606. By Wolffe.</p> <p>1614. By Helme. "A Jewell for Gentry by S. T." 4to. (Brit. Mus.).</p> <p>1793. "The Book of Cote Armour." London, 4to, reprinted by J. Dalloway, with an excellent introduction (Brit. Mus.).</p> <p>1810. The Boke of Hawking Hunting and Cote Armour. Hazlewood's reprint. London. 4to. (Brit. Mus.).</p> |
|--|---|

How did the schoolmaster at St. Albans obtain his types? This is a puzzling question in the present state of palæotypography. Mr. Bradshaw of Cambridge has, by unwearied study of early printed books, thrown great light upon the connection and genealogy of numerous founts used by fifteenth-century printers, and systematic attention to the minute peculiarities of each printer is doubtless the only way in which those old books can be forced to yield up their secrets; but the task is immense, and beyond the powers of any one man to complete. Some day, however, when the palæotypography of this country, as well as of the Continental presses, shall have received that full technical and philosophical analysis which time is sure to bring, the more fortunate bibliographer of the future will be able with certainty to track the footsteps and operations of the early typefounders, and will be enabled to state for certain to what extent Caxton and the St. Albans printer were their own typefounders, and to what extent and to whom they looked for outside help. As the case now stands, we can only confess our ignorance of where the St. Albans types came from.



## CHAPTER III.

### The Subjects Treated.



IN the rude civilisation of the fifteenth century, a year's experience of which would send most of us to our graves, the mental occupation as well as the bodily recreation of our ancestors was almost confined to hunting and hawking. "Fishing with an Angle" came in as a bad third, being too tame a pursuit for men who were no men if not men of war. Mimic war—war on the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air—war which could be pursued in times of peace, and which yet required knowledge, patience, fortitude, and courage—this had great attractions, and we cannot wonder at the general popularity of these pursuits.

The first treatise in the following reprint is upon Hawking, a pastime essentially aristocratic from the great expense it entailed in the purchase, breeding, and maintenance of the birds. This, indeed, coupled with the diminution of game consequent on the progress of civilisation and the increase of the population, led to the gradual decadence of the sport, and nearly to its extinction in the eighteenth century, although, in very rare cases, falconry is even now practised.

As we have seen, one of the most difficult objects in hawking was to obtain an easy command of the proper vocabulary, and so at first start our author instructs us in "The manner to speak of Hawks, from the egg." We must not say a young hawk is hatched, but

'disclosed;' they do not breed but "eyer;" it was a want of culture in any falconer to say that hawks were building their nest, they "timbered" it. When the young could first leave the nest they were "Bowesses," and when they could fly they were "Branchers," and then was the time to catch and train them.

When the young were caught, which was with nets, the first thing was to "enfile" them, that is, to "take a needle and thread and sew up the eyelids," so that they "see never a dele." After a night and a day the threads were cut softly for fear of breaking the "lyddis of the ighen," then they were fed with well-washed flesh, but kept awake the next night and day, after which they were supposed to be tame, or "reclaimed."

The various diseases to which Hawks are liable are then explained, and medicines prescribed for them. Some of these are very absurd and some contradictory. Then comes a variety of terms for every movement and habit, for every limb or part of the body, and for almost every feather in the plumage. In this minute description the author begins at the feet of the bird and so works upwards, as when "Knyghttis been harnesside."

Next we are instructed how important it is to be careful of the manner of guiding the Hawk the first time it is ready to "nomme" a partridge; how to reward her by giving her the head and neck, after which on no account is she to fly again till she has "rejoiced," *i.e.*, sharpened her beak and shaken her feathers. More medicines follow, among which is how to get rid of "lies" (lice). "Take a piece of rough blanket and hold it to the fire till it is quite hot; wrap the hawk therein, and without hurting hold her 'softely and styllly' in your hands, and all the vermin will creep into the cloth." A happy thought this!

The "Gesse," or strip of leather by which the Hawk is held when carrying her on the hand, is next described, together with the creance or long line. More medicines still, and then how to treat Hawks when "in mew," or moulting, a matter of great importance. To promote

“mewing” give the flesh of a kid, a young swan, and especially rats flesh; stewed adders are also strongly recommended, or chickens which have been fed upon wheat soaked in broth of vipers.

Gout seems a common disease in various parts of the Hawk's body, which may be known by swelling and “ungladness;” also rheum and fever and blains and agrum, which last is cured by a red-hot silver needle thrust into the nostrils. Botches in the jaw should be “kutte with a knyfe.” More terms follow for various habits and actions, the last paragraph being upon the variety of Bells used for Hawks. There should be two, one a “femytoyn” (femitone) below the other. “The Bells of Melen (Milan?) were the best, but,” says the author, “there be now used Dutchland bells, of a town called durdrigh (Dordrecht), and they be passing good, sonowre (sonorous) of ringing in shrillness, and well lasting.”

The whole ends with a list of various species of Hawks and their appropriateness to the various stations of life, among which are—

An Eagle for an Emperour.	A Merlyon for a Lady.
A Gerfalcon for a King.	A Goshawk for a Yeoman.
A Peregrine for an Earl.	A Sparehawk for a Priest.
A Muskyte for “an holiwater clerke.”	

The second treatise is upon Hunting, and has a short preface, which probably came, like the first, from the pen of the Schoolmaster.

The work is all in metre, and evidently intended for boys to learn by heart. It begins by telling “my dere chylde” the various kinds of beast to be hunted; the changes of name they take as they grow older; the variety of horns; how to skin and dismember; the various cries and noises to be used; the seasons of hunting various beasts.

Then follow instructions how to hunt the Hare, and what to say to the hounds, who must always be addressed in French, as “arere!” when he enters the kennel-door; “this is the first word, my son, of venery.” “Sa fa cy auaunt,” “Sweff mon amy sweff,” and other similar cries are noted down, some to be shouted twice only and some thrice,

the chief cry being "So now." The knowledge of when and how often these cries should be used was most important, as their proper use would bring "worship among all men." Here, apparently, in the midst of one essay, another is interpolated, and we are treated to a portion of some old dialogue like "The Master of the Hunt," in which the "Man" asks all sorts of questions and the "Master" replies. It might indeed be dubbed "The Hunter's Catechism." This occupies eight pages, and then we fall back upon the original rhyme again and the instructions of the Dame to "my childe," ending with the "Explicit" of Dam Julyans Barnes. Some leaves remaining to be filled up, the moral and other sentences, as already described at page 21, were added.

Perhaps the third treatise upon Coat Armour and the Blazon of Arms is the most interesting portion of the book. The quaintness of some of the explanations is very amusing, and many people will find more points of sympathy, both historical and technical, with this than with the others.

The headline, "Incipit Liber Armorum," gives us at once the title of the manuscript from which the text was compiled. "Heraldry Run Mad" might indeed have been an appropriate title for this, as well as all similar tractates; for the author, in his anxiety to honour the science, does not scruple to take the reader back historically not to Noah only, but to Adam, whose spade, he tells us, was the first shield in Heraldry, and who was the first to bear Coat Armour. The argument, if it may so be called, is:—All "gentilnes" comes from God; there were originally in heaven ten Orders of Angels bearing Coat Armour, but now only nine, Lucifer with "mylionys of aungelis" having fallen out of heaven into hell and other places. As a bondman might say that all men come from Adam, so might Lucifer say he and his angels came from heaven.

Cain, for his wickedness, was the first churl, and all his offspring were churls also by the curse of God. Seth, on the other hand, was a gentleman by his father's blessing; Noah, too, was a gentleman by nature, but of his three sons, "Sem, Cham, and Jafeth," Cham, for

his unfilial conduct, was made "ungentle." The address of Noah to his three sons is curious, and is thus supplemented:—

"Of the offspring of the gentleman Japhet came Abraham, Moses Aaron, and the prophets, and also the King of the right line of Mary, of whom that gentleman Jesus was born, very God and man, after his manhood King of the land of Judah and of Jews, a gentleman by his mother Mary, and Prince of Coat Armour."

Some say that Coat Armour began at the siege of Troy, but it was of far greater antiquity than that, and was founded upon the nine Orders of Angels, who were crowned each with a diadem of precious stones—the Topaz (truth), Smaragdus (hardihood), Amethyst (chivalry), Loys (powerful), Ruby (courageous), Sapphire (wisdom), Diamond, a black stone (durable), Carbuncle (doughty and glorious). These represent Gentleman, Squire, Knight, Baron, Lord, Earl, Marquis, Duke, and Prince. Here we probably have the origin of the shape of various crowns and coronets. Everything is treated in nines, and the nine virtues and nine vices of gentlemen follow, with nine rejoicings, nine articles that every knight should keep, and nine manner of gentlemen, in which we learn that the Evangelists and Apostles were all gentlemen of the right line of that worthy conqueror, Judas Machabeus, who in course of time had fallen to labour, and so were not called gentlemen. The four doctors of the Church—St. Jerome Ambrose, Augustine, and Gregory—were also gentlemen of blood and of Coat Armour. There are nine differences of Coat Armour and nine quadrats, all of which are explained. The "Blasynge of Arms" comes next, the preface to which is by the author, and not by the printer. It begins with the varieties of the Crosses as borne in arms, each being illustrated by a rude woodcut printed in its proper colours, and the blason, or technical description of each is given in Latin, French, and English. All varieties of arms follow, with the mysteries of bends, engrail, borders, chequers, balls, cakes, rings, &c., offering but little which can be quoted, but forming an interesting and useful book of reference.





## CHAPTER IV.

### Philology.



HERE is a strongly marked individuality in the spelling throughout all the treatises in this work. If the Hunting rhymes belong to Dam Julyans, their orthography, like the prose portions, is that of the Schoolmaster, who appears to have been a North-countryman, many words leading to that conclusion. The formation of the plural by adding the letters "is" or "ys" strikes the attention at once. Thus the plural of bells is bellis; egg, eggis; vetch, fetchis; fulmert, fulmertis; hawk, hawkys; herd, herdys; person, personys, and so on. The change of a *y* at the end of a word to an *i* is common, as onli, softeli, unthrefti; and for if; algate; awth for all the; bowke; chylder; clepit; clees; knaw; ken; yowre; and many others are Northern. As might be expected, many Anglo-Saxon and Anglo-Norman words now obsolete are found, such as benymme, blynne, byzete, canell, clepit, colver, dagon, gobbit, kawe, kydde, liggen, merde, nafethrils, nym,\* raton, and many others.

The following vocabulary will show the chief words in which peculiarity of spelling or dialect are noticeable:—

*alfe*, half  
*algate*, always

*and*, used for "if"  
*appillis*, apples

*arn*, are  
*assone*, as soon

\* In the slang of thieves *steal* is to *nim* at this day.

<i>awntelere</i> , antler	<i>coluer</i> , a dove	<i>fetchis</i> , vetches
<i>awth</i> , aught	<i>colode</i> , cold	<i>feldis</i> , fields
<i>awth</i> , all the	<i>cogh</i> , cough	<i>fosterys</i> , foresters
<i>barris</i> , bars	<i>contenynt</i> , contained	<i>folowys</i> , follows
<i>beeflys</i> , beafts	<i>couples</i> , couples	<i>flee</i> , flay
<i>beke</i> , beak	<i>croampe</i> , cramp	<i>forder</i> , further
<i>bellis</i> , bells	<i>currage</i> , courage	<i>forrygeet</i> , forget
<i>bene</i> , be	<i>cum</i> , <i>cumme</i> , come	<i>fofnewt</i> , foft
<i>benymme</i> , take away	<i>dais</i> , days	<i>fowrith</i> , fourth
<i>blynnne</i> , to cease	<i>dacon</i> , a piece	<i>fulmertis</i> , polecats
<i>boon</i> , bone	<i>dayfes</i> , daifies	<i>gedder</i> , gather
<i>bodi</i> , body	<i>deeil</i> , a portion	<i>glayre</i> , white of an egg
<i>bowellis</i> , bowels	<i>defawte</i> , default	<i>gobbit</i> , piece
<i>bott</i> , but	<i>diueris</i> , divers	<i>gres</i> , greafe
<i>bottre</i> , butter	<i>dookes</i> , ducks	<i>groyn</i> , grown
<i>bowke</i> , crooked	<i>doon</i> , do	<i>gyde</i> , guide
<i>bridde</i> , bird	<i>doys</i> , does	<i>habull</i> , able
<i>brought</i> , brought	<i>echeon</i> , each one	<i>hawkys</i> , hawks
<i>bysprenged</i> , fprinkled	<i>ech</i> , each	<i>hawtyn</i> , proud
<i>byzete</i> , gain	<i>eeg</i> , egg	<i>hakke</i> , hack
<i>calt</i> , called	<i>eegis</i> , eggs	<i>haare</i> , hare
<i>calde</i> , called	<i>ellis</i> , else	<i>heepis</i> , heeps
<i>cattis flesh</i> , cat's flesh	<i>elis</i> , eels	<i>hedgis</i> , hedges
<i>canell</i> , cinnamon	<i>errabull</i> , arable	<i>herdys</i> , herds
<i>callish</i> , call (imper.)	<i>efeli</i> , eafily	<i>howndys</i> , hounds
<i>chycon</i> , chick	<i>eueri</i> , every	<i>hoole</i> , whole
<i>chykynnes</i> , chickens	<i>euerofe</i> , rofewater	<i>hould</i> , <i>holde</i> , old
<i>chooce</i> , choice	<i>euyn</i> , <i>eeuen</i> , even	<i>hoom</i> , home
<i>chylder</i> , children	<i>eyre</i> , air	<i>hudge</i> , fmall
<i>clepit</i> , called	<i>eygh</i> , <i>eyghen</i> , eye, eyes	<i>huntid</i> , hunted
<i>cloos</i> , close	<i>febulnefs</i> , feeblenefs	<i>hunterys</i> , hunters
<i>communeli</i> , commonly	<i>fechens</i> , ftoats	<i>hennys</i> , hens
<i>commythe</i> , cometh	<i>faukeneris</i> , falconers	<i>huicles oppon hir</i>
<i>cowntenansis</i> , counte- nances	<i>feederis</i> , <i>federes</i> , feathers	<i>houghis</i>
		<i>hanylon</i> , wiles of a fox

<i>igh, ighe, iyen</i> , eye, eyes	<i>medecyne, medefyn</i> ,	<i>pennyd</i> , feathered
<i>ingraylyt</i> , engrailed	<i>medlide</i> , mingled	<i>perfonys</i> , perfons
<i>inowgh</i> , enough	<i>meele, melis</i> , meal,	<i>pellittis</i> , pellets
<i>ilich</i> , alike	meals	<i>pike</i> , pick
<i>iren</i> , iron	<i>medill</i> , mingle	<i>proceis</i> , procefs
<i>ilke</i> , each	<i>moch</i> , much	<i>puttith</i> , putteth
<i>juse</i> , juice	<i>mony</i> , many	<i>praty</i> , pretty
<i>kaue</i> , call	<i>mowothe</i> , mouth	<i>properteis</i> , properties
<i>ken</i> , know	<i>moystour</i> , moiſture	<i>quarterit</i> , quartered
<i>knaw, knawe</i> , know	<i>myddes</i> , midſt	<i>rad</i> , ? afraid
<i>knottis</i> , knots	<i>mynne</i> , mine	<i>raton</i> , a rat
<i>kneys</i> , knees	<i>naſethrillis</i> , noſtrils	<i>reſtith</i> , reſteth
<i>kow</i> , cow	<i>nares</i> , noſtrils	<i>rede</i> , ready
<i>knyue</i> , knife	<i>naamys</i> , names	<i>rebuket</i> , rebuked
<i>kydde</i> , known	<i>nathelefs</i> , nevertheless	<i>roys</i> , roes
<i>kyndeli</i> , natural	<i>neppe</i> , catmint	<i>roungeth</i>
<i>kut</i> , cut	<i>nettis</i> , nets	<i>rowſe</i> , roufe
<i>layſerly</i> , leiſurely	<i>notabull</i> , notable	<i>ſaauue</i> , fave
<i>lew warme</i>	<i>no moo</i> , no more	<i>ſerven</i> , few
<i>leppys</i> , leaps	<i>nombur</i> , number	<i>ſemytoyn</i> , ſemitone
<i>leif</i> , dear	<i>not</i> , a nut	<i>ſe</i> , fee
<i>leuer</i> , liver	<i>nyghtis</i> , nights	<i>ſhewys</i> , ſhows
<i>lies</i> , lice	<i>nym, nomme</i> , take,	<i>ſlau</i> , flow
<i>linne, lynne</i> , linen	taken	<i>ſnakys</i> , ſnakes
<i>littyl</i> , little	<i>okys</i> , oaks	<i>ſofteli</i> , ſoftly
<i>liggyn</i> , lie	<i>onli</i> , only	<i>ſomwatt</i> , ſomewhat
<i>luke water</i>	<i>ony</i> , honey	<i>ſoore</i> , fore
<i>lyddis of the ighen</i> ,	<i>ones, onys</i> , once	<i>ſowre</i> , ſoar
eyelids	<i>oouen</i> , oven	<i>ſoper</i> , ſupper
<i>lymayall</i> , iron filings	<i>ſon</i> , one	<i>ſowkyng</i> , fucking
<i>looff</i> , loaf	<i>oppyn</i> , open	<i>ſonnys</i> , ſons
<i>maake</i> , make	<i>ordenatili</i>	<i>ſpanyellis</i> , ſpaniels
<i>mary</i> , marrow	<i>owte</i> , out	<i>ſnakys</i> , ſnakes
<i>markeris</i> , markers	<i>parlous, perlous</i> , peril-	<i>taake</i> , take
<i>merde</i> , dung	ous	<i>takys</i> , takes

<i>tempur</i> , temper	<i>varri rede</i> , very red	<i>wroght</i> , wrought
<i>termys</i> , <i>termis</i> , terms	<i>veri</i> , very	<i>wode</i> , <i>wold</i> , would
<i>tho</i> , <i>thei</i> , they	<i>unthrefti</i> , unthrifty	<i>wight</i> , swift
<i>thridde</i> , third	<i>vreyne</i> , urine	<i>woddys</i> , woods
<i>theyem</i> , them	<i>warbellith</i> , warbelleth	<i>wylis</i> , while
<i>threis</i> , thrice	<i>watt</i> , what	<i>yche</i> , each
<i>theys</i> , thighs	<i>weere</i> , where	<i>yghes</i> , eyes
<i>togyder</i> , together	<i>weere</i> , weary	<i>yolow</i> , yellow
<i>toon</i> , two	<i>ware</i> , were	<i>yowre</i> , your
<i>tweys</i> , twice	<i>wengys</i> , wings	<i>yowris</i> , yours
<i>tymeli</i> , timely	<i>whaan</i> , when	
<i>thredis</i> , threads	<i>whote nat</i> , wot not	

We have now traced the various aspects in which this curious work may be viewed. There is not one of them that would not repay much deeper study, and the reader will, doubtless, sympathize with the writer in the wish that more could be discovered concerning the schoolmaster-printer. That his pioneer attempts to establish a printing press met with many discouragements was a matter of course; and, doubtless, he had many technical, business, and even social difficulties to overcome; for a reading public had to be created and patronage was scantily afforded. Nevertheless he struggled on for at least seven years, as we learn from the dates on his books, and whatever may have been his shortcomings, either as author or as printer, the fact of his having been one of the earliest promoters in this country of the grandest discovery which the mind of man has yet made, will unite all of us in honouring the memory and respecting the name, shadowy though it be, of the "Scole mayster of St. Albon."

WILLIAM BLADES.







**N**ot so moch that gentill men and honest persones haue gre:  
ete delite in haukyng and desire to haue the maner to take  
haukys: and also how and in what wyse they shulde gyde theym  
ordynateli: and to knowe the gentill termys in communynge of  
theyr haukys: and to vnderstande theyr sekeneyses and enflam;  
mes: and also to knowe medicines for theym accordyng. and  
mony notabull termys that ben used i haukyng both of their hau  
kys and of the folles that their haukys shall slep. Therefore  
this booke folowynge in a wylde some shewys wery knowlege of  
suche pleasure to gentill men and psonys disposed to se itt.

**T**his is the maner to begynne to kepe haukys: bot not  
all maner haukys. bot onli Goshaukys: and Ter:  
cellus of Goshaukys. and spare haukys. and in what maner  
they shall be take.

**T**he maner to speke of haukis fro an egg to thei  
re habill to be taken.

**N**ow to speke of haukys. first they ben Egges. and af:  
terward they bene disclosed haukys. and communeli gosh  
haukys ben disclosed. as sone as the chough and in some place  
more tymeli after the contre is of hys. and tymeli breedynge.

**A**nd we shall say that haukis doon Eper. and not brede:  
in the woodes. And we shall say that haukys doon wylde when  
they bene tymbering to their nestes. and wot they held ne ma:  
ke ther nestes And in the tyme of their loue they call. and not  
kauke. And we shall say that they feed.

**A**nd when they bene enclosed and begynne to fede any  
thyng of lengthe. Alnoon be kynde they wylle drab somwatt out  
of the nest: and drab to wylde. and come agayn to ther nest

And then thay be clepit **Bolles** **¶** And after saynt **Mars**  
 gawettis day thay wilt flie fro tree to tree . And then thay bene  
 cald **Scalboncheris** . And then it is time for to take hym  
**¶** And .viij. mightis be fore saynt **Margaritis** day **¶** .viij.  
 mightis after is beste takyng of spawe halbes .

**H**ow ye shall demeyn yow i takyng of hawkis  
 & with wat instrumētis & how ye shall hide them

**W**ho so wilt take halbes he must haue nettis wich bental :  
 led wirines and tho must be made of good small threde .  
 and it had ned to be drier other green or blis for espieng of the  
 halbe . and he most take with hym needel and threde to ensile the  
 halbes that ben taken . And in this maner they must be ensiled .  
 Take the needel and threde : and put it throu the ouer igh lid  
 and so of that othez . and make hem fast vnder the beke : that  
 she se neuer a drell and then she is ensiled as she abothe to be .  
 Sum wsen to ensile hem with the needer igh lidde a bone the beke  
 on the hede almost : but that is the wors way For of reason the  
 ouer igh lidde closith more iustly then the nether be cause of the  
 largenessse . When she is ensiled then bere thi halbe home on thi  
 fiste and cast hir on a perch and let hir stande ther a night and  
 a day and on that othez day towarde euen . then take and cut esle  
 the thredes and take hem a way softeli for brekyng of the lyddis  
 of the ighen . Then softeli and faure begynne to fede her . and faur  
 faur with her till she wilt sette well vpon the fist . For it is dre  
 de for hurtynge of hir benyngs . And then thysame night after the



fedynge Wake hz all nyght and the morow all day. Then shal  
Witt be prouid Inough to be reclaimed. And the first meete that  
the shall see: lett it be hoot. and yeue hz Inough ther of

## Whan yowre hawke may be draw to reclayme and the maner of hir dyette

**A**nd if yowre halke be harde penyed: she may be drawne  
to be reclaimed. For all the While that she is tender pen  
yed: she is not habill to be reclaimed. ¶ And if she be a Gos  
halke or Terzell that shall be reclaimed euer fede hym With Wa  
she meete at the drawyng. and at the reclaymyng. bot loke that  
hit be hote. and in this maner Washe it. Take the meet and go  
to the Water and strike it upp and dolne in the Water. and Brun  
ge the Water olte. and fede hir ther With and she be a brabn  
ther. And if it bene an Epesse thow most Wash the meete clen  
ner then ye do to the brabncher. and With a linne cloth wype it  
and fede hir. And euermore the thrid day yeue hz castyng When  
she is slepyng if she be a Gos halke or Terzell in this maner:  
Take new blanket cloth and cut. v. pelettis therof of an m:  
the longe. And take the flesh and cut. v. morcellis: and Withe  
a knyves pynt make an boole in eueri morcell. and put thezm  
the pelettis of cloth. and take a fair dish With Water and put  
hem ther in. Then take the halke and yeue hz a morcell of hote  
meete the moltenedals of halfe hir soop. Then take hit that  
lyth in the Water. and fede hir for all nyght.

## How ye shall fede yowre hawke. and to knowe his infirmiteis. & ther bene many diueris of them

**I**f yowre halke be a spere halke: euer fede his With con  
Wast meet and looke that his castyng be plumage. than  
tooke that it be cleyn vnder the perch. and in the morowe ye shall  
fynde the castyng vnder the perch. and ther ye shall knowe wher;  
ther the halke be clene or noo. For sum gobbit With be yelow  
and sum grene. and sum glaymous. and sum cleere And if it  
be yelow she engenderith the frounce. the Wyche is an euell that  
With rife in the molbothe or in the cheke. And if it be grene she  
engenderith the Rye. The condicion of this euell is this. it With  
arise in the herte and make the herte to swelle. & the ypen all glay;  
mous. and dyke. and wot it haue helpe: it With wone in to the  
legges. and make the legges to rancle. and if it goo fro  
the legges in to the herte a gayne. thi halke is wot loose. And  
if it be glaymous and roping she engenderith an euell calid the  
Cwy. that is When an halke may not mutepse

**M**erke wele yowre medicines here folowynge

### **A** medicine for the frounce i the mowth

**T**ake a siluer spoone and put the small ende in the fyre till it  
be hote. Then let holde the halke and oppyn his beke and bryn

the soore and anoynte it With the mary of a goose that bathe  
 byne longe . and she shall be hool . And if the frounce be Wey  
 as greete as a nole . Take ther is a gubbe ther in . and then  
 thold most cutt it With a Rasur in this maner . Lette holde the  
 halke : and slitte ther the soore is . and thell shalte fynde ther  
 as it Ware the malke of a paeon . Take it owte all hool . and  
 take a pyre of sheeris and cutt the hool of the soore . and ma ;  
 ke it as fayre as ye may With a lynne cloth . and Wipe clene  
 the bloode a Day . and anoynt the soore With balme . iii . dayes  
 are he and afterwarde With poppyen . till it be hool .

### How the frounce comythe .

The frounce comyeth When a man sedith his halke With  
 Horke or cattisflesh . iii . wayes to geyde

### How the Ry comythe .

For defaltes of hoolc meete this schensse the Ry comythe .

### How the Cray comythe .

The Cray comyeth of Wash meete the Wich is Wash With  
 hoolc Water in the defaltes of hoolc meete . Also it comythe

of thredis the Wch ben in the flesh that the halke is fedde With  
For though thow pike the flesh neuer so clene . yet thow shalte  
fynde thredes ther in .

## ¶ Whan thyn hawke shall bathe hym .

**A**nd euer more ech thridde day let thyn halke bathe hym . all  
the somer 'if it be mere Better . and onys in a Beeke in Wynter  
if it be sayre Better . and not ellis . And Whan thow bathest thy  
halke : euer geue hir a morcell of hote mete sonwasth though  
she bene a Goshalke .

## ¶ How ye may cause yowre hawke to flye withe a currage in the morow .

**I**f ye Wilt that yowre halke flye in the morowtide . feede hir  
the nyght before With hote mete . and Wash thessame mete in  
weyne and Wrynng owst the Water clene . and that shall make  
hir to haue lyst and currage to flie i the morow in the best maner

## ¶ How ye shall gyde yow if yowre hawke be full goorged and ye wode soone haue a flight .

**I**f yowre halke be full goorged . and that ye Wold soone wy

pon haue a flighte take .iij. cornes of Blate. and put hem in a  
morcell of flesh: and peue thessame morcellie to the halke . and  
she will cast anon all that she hath withm her. and anon af-  
ter that she hath cast. Looke ye haue a morcell of hote meete  
to peue hir. **A**nd if polbre halke be ouergooged. peue hir  
the same medesyn .

### **A** medecyne for the Rye

**T**ake wysses leuys. and stampe hem in a morter. and thyn-  
ge out the Juse. and with a penne put it in the halkeis naves  
Ones or thyes. When the halke is smalle googed. and anon  
after let hir tye. and she shall be hool as a fyth. **O**r ellis  
take percelli Rootis and serue hir with thym in the same ma-  
ner. and when she tyeth hode cell i polbre hode with the springe  
and that shall make hir wide. but it is perous to use it often  
that the Juse fall nez spryng in to hir pyhes .

**A**lso and ye peue polbre halke fresh butter or the marrow  
of hogges that is in the bone of the butte of porke. it shall ma-  
ke hir to cast Water Beke at the naves. and it will kepe the na-  
res oppn. but it will make hir halstyn and proode

### **A** medecyne for the Cray & moa blow

**T**ake and chafe with polbre hondys the fundament of polbre

halke With luke Water a longe tyme . and after that take the  
powder of Sapifrage or ellis the powder of Kelswe . and a quar-  
tite of may butter . and temper hit best to gender till thay ben  
even medure . than putte . it in a litle top and stoppe it faste . &  
as of tyn as yow feede yowre halke an hool meele anoynt hire  
meete a litle therewith . and that shall make hit to loue meete  
the better for loue of the oynement . and it shall saue hir fro  
the Cray and from many oðer sekensses : that gender of te in  
an halke .

¶ Also take the hote hert of a slyne or of a pigge and  
feede her . ij . days therewith . and she shall be hool .

¶ Also take porke and beete it in hote mylke of a cowe . &  
feede the halke therewith . and that shall make hir mutyse all  
the best .

¶ Also porke With the mary of the woun of the but of porke  
shall make hir mutyse & feede hir With both to gender .

¶ Also use hir to fresh butter and it will doo thesame

¶ Also oon mele or . ij . at the most of the hote leuer of a pig  
shall make hir to mutyse wele . be ware ye yeue hir not to grete  
a goorge therof . for it is a perulous meete

¶ Also take y<sup>e</sup> white of an egge . & labur thesame in a spoge  
as wele as ye wolde make glayre for reds Inke till it be like  
Wat . put thesame in a vessell . & let the meete y<sup>e</sup> shall be for hir  
fop : by a steppe ther in all the day be for . & at night feede hir therw<sup>th</sup>

and that the Rich shall be for his dynes in the mornynge let it  
ly all the nyght. bot in any wyse that ye haue alway fresh  
glepce. and if his sedynge be worke it is the bettis. p' is proued

## **T**he kyndeli termis that belong to hawlus.

**I**n the begynnyng of kyndeli spech of the termys that be  
long to halwys here ye may fynde theym **T**he first  
is h'w fast at all tynge. and speaally Whan she bateth. It is  
calde batynge. for she bateth With hir selte most of tyn causeles

**T**he secunde is rebate youre halwke : to polbre fyft. & thatt  
is Whan polbre halwke bateth. the leest meuyng that ye can ma:  
ke With polbre fyft she Wilt rebate a pen wppon polbre fyft

**T**he thurde is fæde polbre halwke. and not gyue hir meete

**T**he fawrth is an halwke snytith. or selwith hir beke and  
not Wipith hir beke **T**he .v. poure hauke Joubith. and not  
slepith **T**he .vi. poure halwke pwoymth. and not pikith and  
she pwoymth not bot Whan she begynnith at hir leggs. and set  
theth moystour like oyle. at hir taitt. and balbometh hir fete &  
st akpith the fedens of hir Wynge thowls h'z beke. and it is  
calde the note. than as she fetchis the oyle. And ye shall vn  
derstonde an halwke Wolde not be letted of hir pwoynng. For  
that tyme that she pwoymth she is lykynge and lustry. and  
Whanne she hath toone she Wilt. wds hize myghtly.

And sum tyme yowre halke colntenanis as she piked hir . and  
 yet she pownith not . and thyn ye most say she Reformith hir fed-  
 us and not piketh hir fedris . ¶ The . viij . yowre halke colp-  
 eth and not bekyth ¶ The . viij . she wolsith and not shakith  
 her selfe ¶ The . ix . she strepnith and not Clithith nor Crat-  
 chith ¶ The . x . she mantellith and not stretchith Whan she put-  
 tith her leges from hir oon after an other : and hir Wynges fo-  
 lob after hier legges . then she dooth mantill hir and Whan she  
 bath mantilled hir and byngith booth her Wynges to geider o-  
 uer hir backe ye shall say yowre halke Warbellith hir Wynges .  
 and that is oon terme wbe therfore ¶ The . xi . ye shall say  
 yowre halke mutef sith or mutith and not stypfich . ¶ The  
 . xij . ye shall say cast yowre halke to the perch . and not set yow-  
 re halke vpon the perch .

**H**ere shal ye understonde furthermore oher ma-  
 ner of termys that belong vn to hawkis for to cō-  
 mende them for diuerse of theyr proprietes

**F**irst ye shall say This is a sayr halke . an hudge hau-  
 ke a longe halke . a short thike halke . & for not this is  
 a grete halke . also ye shall say this hauke has a large beke Or  
 a shortt beke . and call it not bille . an hudge hede or a small hede  
 de sayre sesoned ye shall say yowre halke is full goozged and  
 not cropped . and yowre halke puttrichouer and endueth . and  
 yet she dooth booth ouerselyp .



## **C**How yowre hawke puttethouer

**A**n halke puttethouer when she remeuith the mete from his goorge in to his bolwillis . And thus ye shall knowe it by an she puttethouer she traueseth with his bodi . and specialli with the necke : as a Crane dothe or an othe: badd

## **C**Whan ye shall say enduth & embowellid

**A**n bolke enduth neuer as long as his bolwillis bene full at his fedynge . but assone as she is fedde . and resteth she enduth the littall and littall . And if his goorge be wide and the bolwell any thyng stiffid . ye shall say she is embowellid and hath not fully enduthed and as long as ye may fele any thyng in his bolwillis it is perous to geue his any mete .

## **C**Wete well theys termys folowynge

**S**ay an halke hath a long wyng . a faire long tayll with variis olb . and stonidith wypon the . wy . This halke is entirpened That is to say when the fedris of the wynges bene bitwen the body and the thighis . This halke has an hudge legge or a flat leg . or a wande legge . or a faire enfeid legge

## **C**To knowe the maill of an hawke

**H**alkes haue white maill . Canuasmaill or Red maill . And som call Red maill Iron maill . White maill is soone knowe . Canuasmaill is betwene white maill and Iron maill . And Iron maill is part Red .

## **A** Plumage . and Caste poure hawke.

**A** Goshawke nor a tercelt in thare fore aage haue nott thau maples named . bot it is calde their plumage . and after the cote . it is calde theyr Maill **A** And if polbr halbke re Ward to any foble by countenance for to flez ther to ye shall say cast the halbke ther to . and not lett flu ther to .

## **A** Nomme or seelid .

**A** And if polbre halbke Nomme a foble . and the foble bre: ke a Way fro hir . she hath discomfet mony federes of the foble . and is brokpn a Way for m kyndeli spech ye shall say poure halb ke hath Nomme or seelid a foble and not take it

## **A** werfore an hawke is calde a Rifelere .

**A** And oft tyme it happith mony an halbke for egerneffe When he shulde Nomme a foble he seelith bot the federis . and as ofte as he doos so he Rislith . therfore such halbkys ben called Rife: leres if they doo ofte so .

**H**ow ye shall naame the memberes of poure hawks in conuenient termes .

**N**ow ye shall vnderstande the naames off the memberies of halbkys : to begynne at hir fete and goo vpbwarde as knyghtis wen barnesside and armed . g so be shall ename be

## ¶ Talons .

First the grete Cless behynde . that strength the bace of the hande . ye shall call hom Talons

## ¶ Downces .

The Cless With i the fote ye shall call of right her Downces

## ¶ Longe Sengles .

Both certainly the Cless that are upon the medyll stretch : as ye shall call the loong Sengles .

## ¶ Wetty Sengles .

And the uttermost Cless ye shall call the Wetty Sengles

## ¶ The key or Closer .

Understand ye also that the longe Sencles be calde the key of the fote . or the Closer . For what thyng som euer it be y<sup>t</sup> yowre halbe strength : open that Sengle . and all the fote is open : for the strength ther of fortyfieth all the fote .

## ¶ Seris of watery or waxy coloure .

Knowe ye : that the skynne a white yowre halbes legges & his fete . is calde : the Seris of his legges and his fete . Why : ther thay be Watery whed or of Waxy coloure yowre .

## **T**he Beine feder. Full Sommyd myd . and Reclaymede .

**A**n halbe hath . viij . federis vppon his taylor . and con pyn  
apoll feder of thesame is in the myddis . and in maner  
all that oder bene couertid vnder thesame feder . and that is cal  
led the Beine feder of the taylor . And ther gooth blacke baris  
ouerwarde the taylor . and thos same baris shall telle yow when  
she is full summed . or full fermyd . For when she is full barid  
she stonidith vppon . viij . and then she is perfite red to be Recla  
ymed .

**W**e shall vnderstonde that as longe as an halbe stonidith  
vnder the nombre of . viij . baris . And she be in hir sore aage :  
it most be sayde that she is not full summed . for so longe she is  
bot tender pemyd wether she be bralcher or Eyes .

**A**nd iff she be a melbed halbe . and stonde within . viij . bar  
ris . ye shall say she is not full fermed . for she is not habull to be  
Reclaymed . be cause she is dralbe to soone obt of the melbe for  
she is not hard pemyd . no more than a soore halbe .

## **T**rayles or Braylfederis . Degouted

**T**o knowe forthmore of halbes . an halbe hath long smale  
White federis . hangyng vnder the tayll : from hir bollett dolbe  
warde . and the same federis ye shall call the brayles or the brayle  
federis . And comunely euery goshalbe and euery tercellis  
braylis bene bysprengeid with blacke speckes . like Armpis . and  
for all that thay bene accomptid neuer the better . Bot and a  
spare halbe be so Emptied vppon the brayles . or a Musket . oder  
ye shall say she is Degouted to the vntermost brayle . and much  
it betokynis hardnes .

## **B**rest federys . Plumage . Barbe federys . Pendaunt federys .

The federis a bove the formore partes of an halke : be called the brest federis . & the federis vnder the wynges are plumage . The federis vnder the beke be calde the barbe federis . And the federis that bene at the Joynte : at the halkes Rne they stonde hangyng and sharpe at the ends . thos be calde the pendaunte federis .

## **F**lagg or faggis federys .

The federis at the wynges next the body be calde the flagg or the faggis federis .

## **B**eme federes of the wyng Sercell

And the long federis of the wynges of an halke bene calde the beme federis of the wyng . And the federis that sum call the pyngon feder . of a noder folde . of an halke : it is calde the Sercell . And ye shall vnderstande iff an halke be in melbe y<sup>t</sup> same sercell feder shall be the last feder that she witt cast . and tyll that be cast . she is neuer melbed . yit it has bene seen : that halkes haue cast that same first as I haue herde say . bot that other Kewle is gendraft . and when she hath cast hir sercellis in melb . then and not erst it is tyme for to fede hir with wasch meete and to begynne to ensayne hire .

## **E**nsayne

Ensayne of an halke is the grea . and bot if that be take a way with fedynge of wasch meete and other wyse as it shall be

declared here after. the Bitt gedder a pannel Rich may be his ad  
termost confusion . and the flye therwith . and take blood . and  
on thez vppon .

## **C** Couertis or couert

Ther bene also federis that close vppon the faceellis . and  
thos same be calde the couertis or the couert federis . and so all the  
federis be calde that bene nepe ouer the long tyme federis . and  
the fagg federis vppon the Wynges

## **C** Backe federis .

**C** The federis vppon the backe halse be called the backe federis

## **C** Beke Clape Nares Sere

**C** The Beke of the halke is the vpper parte that is croked

**C** The neder parte of hir beke is calde the clape of the halke

**C** The Hoolis in the halkes beke bene called the Nares .

**C** The polde be twene y<sup>e</sup> Beke & y<sup>e</sup> yeghen is calde y<sup>e</sup> Sere

## **C** Crynettis .

Ther be oon an halke long smale blake federis : like he ;  
aboute the sere & thos same : be calde Crinettis of y<sup>e</sup> halke

## **C** Sore aage .

**C** We shall vnderstonde that the first yere of an halke Wy ;  
ther she be calde Bradncher or Egesth . that first yere is calde  
hir sore aage . and all that yere she is calde a sore halke . for

and she eschape that yere . With good fedynge she is likly to endure longe .

## ¶ To Reclayne an hawke

**I**ff ye Witt Reclaym yowre halbke ye most departe oon me le m. iij. melis . vnto tyme that she Witt come to Reclayne . and Whan she Witt come to Reclayne enerce her melis euery day bettez and bettez . And oz she come to the Reclayne make her that she solbre not . For thogh she be Wel Reclaymed hit may happyn that she Witt solbre : so hagh in to the Eyre . that ye shall Nether se hir nor spyde hir .

¶ And iff yowre halbke shall flie to the partrich . looke that ye Ensayme her oz she flie . Whether she be Stralcher or Eyes Or melbed halbke .

## ¶ Why an hawke is called an Eyes .

**A**l halbke is calde an Eyes of hir Eyghen . for an hawke that is brought vnder a Buffard or a Nuttocke : as mony be : hath Wateri Eyghen . For Whan thay be disclosed and kepit in ferme tyll thay be full summyd . ye shall knowe thym by thyr Wateri Eyghen . And also hir looke Witt not be so quycke as a Stralcheris is . and so be cause the best knowlege is by the Eygh . they be calde Eyes .

**W**e may also knowe an Eyes. bi the palenesse of the feres  
of her legges of the fece ouer the beke. And also by the tawny  
tyes that be vpon her tayll and her Wings. Which tawnytyes com  
for lacke of fedynge. When thay be Eyes.

### **W**hat a tawnt is:

**A** Tawnt is a thyng that gooth ouerbarre the feres of  
the Wings. and of the tayll lyke as andy it were eetye With  
Beesms and it begynyth first to breede at the body. in the penne  
and that same penne shll fete asonder. and falle a Way thur;  
rou the same tawnte andy then is the halke disparagid for all  
that yere.

### **W**edecynys to Ensayne yowre hawke

**T**ake the Rote of Rasue and do it in clene Water. and lay  
the flesh thur in. to temper a grete Whyle. and yeue it to yowre  
halke to ete. and if she ete thur of. drede not bot hit shall be;  
nymme hiz grece. bot Within. iij. days she shall not grettely a;  
bate.

**A**lso take puliait andy garlek and stampe it Bele to ge;  
der. and Wrynge owte the Juice in a dysh. and then Beete the  
flesh thur in. and fede yowre halke thur wyth. andy bot it tem;  
pur yowre halke. that is to say ensayne yowre halke. With in  
. iij. days. I meruett Bot looke eueri day that ye make new  
Juice and When ye fede hiz. Beete yowre meete thur in.



**A**lso take the Juice of purrell Mozis otherwise cald purrell;  
celly Rootis . and the same of Zop . and Wash yowre flesh ther  
in and yowre halbe shall be Enfaymed kyndly . and no grate  
abate to the halbe .

**S**om use to lay thare flesh in Water almost a day . and ye  
ue the same to the halbe at sope . and that at lycht all nyght .  
to geue to hir in the mornynge . and thus to fede hym in melow or  
thay be drawen a bolbe a moneth or .vi. Weekys . and to ensa;  
yme theym or thay com on fise . as sone as thay cast theyr rez  
cell . then is the tyme to begynne to fede hym soe .

### **H**ow yowre hawke enfaymyng the

**U**nderstonde ye for certayn : that as longe as yowre halbes  
fete be blackysh and rough : she is full of grece . and euer as  
she enfaymyth . hir fete Will Bay yelow and smothe

**H**ow ye shall gyde yowr whan yowre hawke is  
redy to flie . Also ye shall say put vp a partriche

**W**han ye haue enfaymed yowre halbe : and Reclaymped  
hir . and that she is redy to flie to the partrich . ye must  
take a partrich in yowre bagge . and goo in to the felde . and let

polbre spanyellis fynde a Couy of partrichys . and When they  
be put vpp . and begynne to scatre . ye most haue markeris to  
marke som of thaym . and then colouple vpp polbre houndys . Wan  
ye haue so woon . let sum felow of polbris pueli take the partrich  
olbte of polbre bagge . and ty it by the legge : With a crounce .  
and cast it vpp as high as he can . and as soon as the halbke  
seith hir she Witt flie ther to . and if polbre halbke sees the parti:  
rich a boone . yeue hir a rebarde : theruppon . and go after y<sup>t</sup>  
by lay soure to the partrich that be marked and doo as I shall  
tellt polb here folowynge .

**C** If ye haue a chastised hounde : that Witt be rebuket : and  
is a Retriuer . coucouple him and no moo of polbre houndes .  
and goo to a fengler partrich : of the couy so spaylid . and be as  
nygh as ye can to the Risyng therof and if polbre halbke desire  
wilt hir to it . and if she take it then is polbre halbke made for  
that yere . and of the same partrich that she sleth . thus ye moost  
rebards hir as it shewith here nept folowynge .

### **C** how ye shall rewarde yowre hawke .

**T**ake a knyfe and cutt the hede and the necke from the body  
of the partrich . and strip the skynne a way from the necke . and  
yeue that same to the halbke . and couer the body of the fowle With  
a bonett or an hatt . and lay the sayd hede and the necke therup:

pon . and if she Witt forsake the fowle that she plungeth on . and  
com to the rebarde . then preupli take a Way the partrich . and re  
Warde poltre halke With the Grayne . and the necke . Be Wa  
re that she eete no bonys . for that is euell to endelwe . and it  
Witt make hir conlusty : for to flye . And thus ye most serue  
hir of as many as she sleth . but let hir rebarde be the lasse .  
for ellis she may be sone full goozged . and then she may flye  
no more a grette While .

### How yowre hawke shall Reioyse .

And when poltre halke hath sloyne a fowle . and is re  
barded as I haue sayde . let hir not flie in no Whise tyll y<sup>e</sup> she  
haue Reiosed hir . that is to say . tyll she haue selved . or snyded  
hir beke . or ellys wylfed her . and when she hath done any of  
theys . or all . go and retriue moo and she Witt nymp lentye .

When yowre hawke hath nomme a fowle how  
ye shall do that ye rebuke not the hawke .

Here Bele oon thyng . and beware therof . when poltre hau  
ke hath nomme a partrich . stonde a goode Way of . and come  
not to nygh her . and daryue a Way poltre boundys . for rebu  
kyng of hir . for many halbys loue noon hwbady . and also

many holdndys Witt benymme theym theyre game from thez  
fote . and that is parlous . and Whiles polbre halke plumith  
nimme softely towarde hiz . alway nere and nere . and if she  
leue plumpng . and loke vpon yow . stonde stytt and chyrke  
hiz . and Whistyt hiz . tytt she plume ayen . and thus serue hiz  
tytt ye be right nere hiz . Than softely and layserly : sett oppon  
polbre kneys . and preevely While she plumpth sett polbre honde  
and be sure of the gesse . and than ye may gyde att thyng as ye  
Wyllt . and if ye do the contrary : she Wyllt for feere carry his  
game or let it go quyke . and that is bot losse to yow and  
polbre halke also .

**A** medecyne for to make an hawke to cast that  
is a comberpd with castyng with in her body

**T**ake the Juice of Salandyne . and Wetz a morcell of flesh  
thyr m . the molntenance of a Note . and yeue that morcell  
to the halke . and that shall make hiz for to cast his olde cast  
tyng . and the halke shall be safe .

**A** medecyne for an hawke that will coure

**W**asth the flesh that polbre halke shall be fedde With : in ye  
Juice of fenett . and that shall take away that pride from hiz  
and make hiz to leue his solwryng Whiche she be lene or fatte .

And mony tymes an halke Wilt so bre than she lackyth ba;  
thng .

### A medecyne for an hawke that is lowle .

Take quycke siluer and put it in a bassin of brasse . and  
do ther to saladyne : and ashys . and medytt it Bele to geder .  
tyllt all the quycke siluer be dede . and medytt ther to fat of ton;  
nyg . and anoynte the halke ther with . and hang it aboute hiz  
necke tyllt it fallt a way . and that shall slee the lies .

Also polbre of orpement blolben wypon an halke : With  
a panne shall slee the lies .

Also take a dagon or peece of Rought blanket wyshoron  
and holde it to the fire . wnto tyme it be thorough olde warme  
and Drappe the halke therein . and than holde hiz softely and  
styll . for hurtyng in polbre hondys . and the vermyn Wilt cre  
pe in to the cloth .

Also holde hiz in the sonne in a fayre day . & ye shall se  
the vermyn crepe olde wypon hz federis . then take a knyfe and  
Bete the oon side of the blade therof w' polbre molthy . & allway  
as thay aperre lay the Bete side of the knyfe to thym . and they  
Wilt cleue ther to . and than ye may slee thaim .

## **C** The oppynion of Ostregiers.

**A**fter the oppynion of many Ostregiers: and ye see yowre halbe contynually With Forke With Japes. With Spyes. Or especially be hir mech in Rayeny Bedes. thay shall be louse.

## **C** Ostregeris. Speruiteris. Faukenetis.

**N**ow be cause I speke of Ostregeris: ye shall vnderstande that thay be calde Ostregeris that kepe Goshalwys. or Ter cellis. and tho that kepe Sperhalwys and muskettys ben cal led Speruiteris. and keperis of all other halwys ben callide Faukenetis.

## **C** The length of the Gesse. Lewnes. Tyretis. and how they be fastined. a Bewettis

**H**alwys haue aboute thyr legges Gesse made of lede most commonly. som of silke. Wich shulde be no longer bot that the knoutis of thym shulde apere in myddys of the lefte honde: betwe ne the longe syngre and the leche syngre. be cause the lewnes shulde be fastened to thym. With a payre of tyretis. Wich tyretis shuld rest vppon the lewnes. and not vppon the gesses. for hnggng and fastngng vppon trees When she flyeth. and the saame lewnes. yow shall fasten than absolute yowre lttt syngre slackly. in compassng the saame in . iiii . or . v .

folde . as a boldfyrng vncouppede and the lecherys ferue to kepe  
hiz from Byndyng Whan she bakys ¶ Also the same lecheris  
that be putt in hiz bellis : to be fastyned a houte hiz legges ye  
shall calle Helbetis .

## ¶ Craunce .

**A**ll ye shall call the long lyne that ye do call youre halke  
to Reclaym With : yowre Craunce . What so euer it be .

## ¶ A medecyne for an hawke that will cast flesch

**P**utte the flesch that yowre halke shall eate in fayre Water .  
and fede her therewith . iij . days . and she shall holde hiz flesch at  
the best .

## ¶ A medecyne for an hawke that has lost here courage .

**A**n halke that hath loost her courage : aman may knowe  
if he Will take good hede . For such is hir maner . Whan she  
is cast to a fowle . she fleth a wayward as thogh she knewe  
nott the fowle . Or ellis she Will flie a luptt Way after . and  
a noon she perceyeth it opp . and for such an halke thys is a  
good medecyn .

**T**ake Oyle of spayne and temper it With cleve Wyne . and  
With the yolke of an egge and put therein hafe . and thros yewe  
to polbre halke . v. morcellus . and then set hir in the sonne . and  
at even fede hir With an olde hote coluer . and if ye fede hir th<sup>9</sup>  
ij tymys that halke Was neuer so lusty nor so Joly before . as  
she Will be after and come to hir owne corage .

**T**his make poudre of mecles that stynkith . and putt the  
poudre on the flesh of a pecke and meditt the blode of the pecke  
among the poudre . and make hir to eete the flesh .

**A** medecyne that an hawke shall not lie i mew  
for unlustynesse .

**T**ake ferne Rotis that growith on an Oke . and oke appil  
lis and make Juice of thym . and Bete hir flesh therein . a feere  
the halke . ij . tymys or . iij . and that shall make hir to leue that

**A** medicine for an hawke that hath the teyne

**A**n halke that hath the teyne a man may sone knowe if he take  
hede . for this is his maner She Will pante more for oon batynge  
then an other for . iiii . g if she shulde flie a litle while she shuld  
almost lese hir breath . Whether she be fatte or lene . and alway she  
makyth heuy chere . and for that this is the medecyne .



**T**ake a quantyte of the Rednesse of hofelt With the poude  
of Rasne and peper and somwhat of gynger. and make the  
reof in fresh grece iij. pelletys and holde the holdke to the fire  
and When she felith the hete make hir to swalowe the . iij pel  
letys by strength. and knytte fast her beke that she cast it not  
olote and so thries. and she shall be safe.

**A**lso take Rasne and Rubarbe. and grynde it to gedre.  
and make Juice thzof and Wete the flesh thzm. and yeue it  
hir to eete. and she shall be wooll.

**A**lso take alisabndre and the Roote of prima rose and  
the Roote of gro gnateles and seeth all in the bottre of a kolb  
and yeue hir. in morcellis euery day vnto the tyme that she  
be hole. and looke that she be boide When ye yeue hir the me;  
weyne.

### How a man shall take an hawke fro the Eyer

**W**ho so takys an halke from the Eyerer: hym behoueth  
to doo Wisely. in bryngyng hym easeli. and to kepe him  
Bele from colde. and from hurtynge of thyr wyngs. for thay  
be full tendre. and thay most haue grete rest. and thay may  
not haue styngyng & filthy Eyre bot as clene as can & may  
be thoght. and euermore yeue him clene meete. and hote. &  
a luttel & oftyn. & change oftyn thez meete bot loke it be hot

and cutt hz meete in to smale morcellis . for thay shulde nott  
tye on lonyes tyll they myght flie . Then after When she beg;  
ynneth to penne . and plumpth . and spalchith and pikith hz sel  
fe . Putt hz in a cloose warme place . that no fulmertes nor fe;  
cheus . ne othz wermyz com nott in to hz . and let the place be  
seuce from Wynde and rayne . and then she Witt preue hz selfe  
and euez more yeue hz good hote meetys . For it is better to  
a man to fede his halke While she is tendre With hote meetys .  
to make his good With somme cost . then to fede hz With euell  
meetys to make hz wntrestis With tytt cost . **A**nd looke  
When she begynneth to ferme then yeue hz bathyng .

**A** medecyne for wormys in an hawke wiche se  
kenesse is called the Sylaundris .

**M**erke Wel this schenesse and beware throz . This is the  
medecyne thzfore . ye shall take an herbe that is called Nepe  
and putt it in a small gut of a Capon or of an henne . and  
knyt it With a threde . and let hz Resoue it hoott . and she  
shall be hoott and saafe **T**hus ye shall knowe When  
yolwe halke hath Wormys in hz bolke . Looke When she hath  
castyng and ye shall fynde oon or .ij. a bolke hz castyng pla  
ce iff she haue ony .

**A** medecyne for an hawke that castys wor  
mys at the foundemēt what wormis that thei be

**T**ake the lymaylk of Iron : & medyt it w<sup>e</sup> flesh of porke &

yeue it to ye hauke . ij . days for to heale . and she shall be hooll

**A** medecyne for an hawke that hath a sekenesse  
the wich is called the aggresteyne .

**W**hen ye se yowre halwe herte his fele With his Beke . and  
pullyth her tayll . then she hath the aggresteyne . For this seken-  
nesse take Merde of a wyde . and of a shepe . and of an allob .  
and stronge vynegre . and do all softely in a bassyn of brasse . &  
Medyllt hrm Bele to geder : to serue . iij . days after . and yeue  
his flesh of a coluer With ony and With powder of peper . and  
set hir in a derke place . and so so . iij . days . and When ye see  
Melb fedetis in the tayll . Wash hir With eueryse . and she shall  
be hoole and soafe .

**A** medecyne for an hawke that hath the cro-  
ampe in hir wynges and how it cumnyth .

**F**or this Cwampe take a Whyte looff of beere sumwhat colder  
then it cumnyth out of the ouen . and let holde the halwe soof-  
tely for hurtynge . and put the looffe almoost thowls oute . and  
display the wynges esely . and holde it betwene the . ij . partes of  
the looffe . and let it be holde so . the space of alfe a quartre  
of an houre . and she shall be hoole .

**T**he Cwampe cumnyth to an halwe With takynge of co-  
lode in hir yowthe . Therefore it is goode for an halwe to be  
in his warme : yonge and hold . and this medecyne is good  
at all tymes for his Whythe : she be yonge or hold .

**L**et not an hawke be put in mew to late bot in  
this maner as it folowth. if ye loue your hawke

**I**f ye loue Beke your halke. Kepe her Beke. and put hir  
nott late in mew. for who so for couetesnesse of fluging leses the  
tyme of his halke mewyng. and Withholdis her to long therfro  
he may after putt hir i mew at auenture. for then a parte of hir  
mewyng tyme is past. ¶ Who so putteth his halke in mew  
in the begynnynge of Lentyn. if she be kept as she alth to be she  
shall be mewed. in the begynnynge of Auguste.

**H**ow ye shall dispose and ordayne your mew

**S**ett and dispose your mew. in this maner so. that no Be  
felt nez puleatt nez non other wormyn entre ther to Mer none  
Wynde. nez no grate colde Mer that it be ouer hote. Let that on  
parte of the mew be turned to Warde the sonne. so that in the mo  
ost parte of the day : the sonne may come Inne.

¶ Also ye most se that she be not auoyed nez greued Withe  
mych noyse. nez with song of men. and that no maner folkes  
come to hir. bot oonly he that fedyth hir.

¶ It behouyth that your halke haue a fedynge stocke in hir  
mew. and a longe stryng tyed ther to : to fastyn hir mete with  
for ellis she Witt carpe it a bolde the hous. and soyle it with dust  
¶ And peradventure she Witt hyde it till it stycke. and then fede  
vpon it. and that myght be hir deth. and therfor When it is  
bondyn to the sayd fedynge stocke. she shall nether at the fedynge  
nez at the tryng ne at the lightyng ne at the Rysyng hurte  
hir selfe. ¶ And when she hath fedde. take a Way the remenaunt  
if any leue. and in any wyse that she haue clene mete. and all  
euery meett fresh. for of stale metis and euell metis she shal  
engender mony sekeneses. ¶ And loke ye go neuer to your

melb hot Whn ye shall yeue polbre halbke meete . or ellis to bz:  
yng Water to bathe her . and suffyz no Rayn to Dete hir at no  
tyme . and ye may . and as for hir bathyng that shall no thig  
hynder hir melbyng .

**T**he maner how a man shall put an hawke  
in to mewe . and that is to be wele nooted .

**O**ff oon thynge ye most beware Best pff she haue any seke:  
nes that ye make her hole or ye put her in melbe . for as I w  
terstonde a seke halbke shall neuer melb Well . for though she me  
be she shall not endure hot While she is grete and fatte . for at the  
abatyng of hir astate she may no lenger endure .

**S**ome tyme With othel any medicyne many men drysyn hou  
they myght melb ther halbkys for sum put halbkys in melb at  
high estate . and sum Whn they be right lobb . and sum Whn  
they be full . and sum Whn they be Empty and lene . and sume  
Whn they be myserabull lene . Bot therof it is no force . iff she  
be hole Neuertheles . I shall say myn aduyce as I haue sene &  
lerned .

**W**ho so puttith a Goshalke or a Cercell or a spere halbke in  
to melb so high that she may be no higher . she Will holde hir lo:  
nge in the poynt : or that she lese or lent any federis . And who so  
puttith hir in melb lene . it Will be long or she be remounted and  
who so puttith hir in melb to hungry and to lene : if she haue me  
ete at hir Best she Will ete to moch . be cause of hunger . and pa:  
uerture she may be dede thyz by . as hath ofte be sene

**B**ot who so will that an halbke endure and melb kyndli . myn  
councell it is that she be not to high nor to low . nor in gre

ie defesse of hunger. but like as the Wolde flee best then take hee  
the firste way of to moche etyng. unto tyme that she be starved  
and after that a man may take her such mete as I shall tell mo  
re playnly here after

## **I**n what maner and how a man shall fede his hawke in newe.

**T**ake With That meetis she hath bene most used to be fedde and  
fede hir therwith. .viij. days continually. and the .viij. days ye  
ue hir birdis Inow. both morow and euyng. and let hir plomme  
repon hem Wele. and take castyng of the plomage. and that sh  
all talabnt hir Wele. and cause her to haue good appetite and  
it shall close Wele hir bowillis and When she is Well clenfed.  
ye may geue hir What mete that ye will so it be cleue and fresh

**T**he best mete to make an halke to melbe moost sone  
Wyth othe any meate is the fleche of a kydd and of a yong  
Swanne and of a chykn and especiall Ratons flech so ther  
be not assaughte Moon like to hit and of a yong goos for such  
mete is hote of it selfe.

**A**nd take gobietis of grete fresh Elis. and specialli the col  
pon next the Nauell. and Weete it in hote blode of moton it is  
goode to make her to melbe. but specialli it shall make her Right  
after hir soore aage

**T**hes sayd fleshes bene goode to melbe an halke: and to  
keep hir in state but loke she haue good plante euery day. so that  
she Ra ther leue parte than lacke any. and euery .ij. day let hir  
both if she lyst

**A**nd When she Washy wgh ferme yewe his hennys and  
face make and of an hounde is passing good .

**A**n halbe is neuer full ferme nor redy for to draue olde  
of melb wnto tyme his farcell be full growyn . yet haue I sene su  
follys take hem olde of melbe When the farcell were bot halfe i  
spronge . and that is perulous . for they are not then hard pen  
ned .

**S**om follys wsem When an halbe has cast his farcell to  
begynne and Wash his meete . and fede him so in melb With Wash  
meete a monyth or . xvi . Weekys or euer thay draue thaim .

**B**ot of all fleshes after she is melbed . a resenable goorge  
of an hooke haue is best . and also of a crowbe hote . bot it  
moste be Wash in Water : and then it is the better . For that  
Wilt not benygmen hem hastily thyr grece . nez put hem in no  
grece febulnes . for it durith sumwhat With his .

**T**o make an halbe to mew tyme with owte  
and hurtynge of hir .

**N**ow I shall tell yow tenay true medecynes for to melbe an  
halbe lustly that ye shall beleue for wolthe and ye wilt as  
for thym .

**T**her be in Woodys or in hedgis Wormys cald eders that  
ben Medde of nature . and he is cald Lepa . and also ther be sna  
kys of the same kynne . and they be veri bitter . Take .ij . or .iij  
of thym and smyte of ther hys and thendys of thyr taylis .  
Then take a new earthyn pot : that has neuer used . and cut hem

i to small gobletts . and put thos same therein . and let hem se ;  
the stronglich . a grete While . at good layser . and let the pot be  
couered . that no ayre com obte of it ner no breth and let it se  
the so long that the saame colpons seth to grece . then cast it out  
and doo a Way the bonis . and geve the grece . and put it in a cle  
ne vessell . and as oft as ye fede polbre halke : a noyt her meete  
therin . and let hir ete as moch as she Wilt . and that meete shal  
mede her at polbre alwe Wilt .

### **C**A nother medecyne .

**T**ake White : and put it in the brothe that the dervis Were so :  
then m . and When ye se the White begynnyth to cleue : take it obte  
and fede hennys or ephynnes therwith . and fede polbre halke  
With thos same polayn .

**W**ho so will that an hawke mede not nor fall  
noon of hir federis . therefore here is a medecyne

**T**ake powder of Canell . and the Juice of franke cost and  
the Juice of parange . and take morcellis of flesh . iij . or . iiii . if  
ye lust and Beete them therein . and make the halke to swallow  
hem and sewe hir so many tymys .

**A**lso take the skynne of a snake or of an Eder . and cut  
it in to small peces . and temper it With hote blod : and cause  
polbre halke oftyen tymes to fede thros and she shal not mede .



## **T** For the gowte in the throte .

When ye se yowre halbe blash of tyn tymes : and that it comys of no batyng . ye may be sure for both the gowte in the throte  
And for that Take the blode of a pekoc . and Encense myrra ;  
holanana . and clavis of gelofre . and canell and gyngex . and  
take of all thes euynlich and medylt hym With peocklys blo ;  
de and seth it tyll it be thyecke . and therof make mozellis .  
and geue the halbe therof eueri day . at mydmozne and at  
Moone .

## **R** For the gowte in the hede and i the Raynes .

When ye se yowre halbe may not endur byr mette nor remou-  
te byr astate . she hath the gowte in the hede and in the Ray-  
nes .

**T** Take Mompan oderbise called mompan . among Portuga-  
ries ye may haue it . and the skynne of an haare and geue it to  
yowre halbe to ete . iij . tymes With the flesh of a catt . and iff  
she may holde that mette she shall be saafe .

## **T** A medecyne for a sekene called the fallera

When ye se that yowre halbes clees Ray White : then she has  
the fallera . For this sekene take a blacke snake . and cutte a  
Ray the hede . and the tayll . and take the myddylt . and fry it in  
an erthyn pote . and take the grece and saue it . and anoynt  
the flesh of a peoke therewith and geue it to the halbe for to

ete viij. days : and ye haue no pebble yeue hir flesh of a colt  
and after the .viij. days . yeue hir a chekyn . and Wash it a litle  
and yeue it hir to ete . and take the tenderest of the breste Withe  
the freshelt bone and let hir ete it . and if she amende any thi  
ng she shall be hoall .

### A medecyne for the crampe in the thigh in the legge and in the fote of an hawke .

When ye se your hauke lay hir oon fote wppō her oter fote . she  
is take Withe the crampe . Then drabe hir blode wppon the fote  
ye lies wppon that oter fote . and wppon the legge also . and  
she shall be hoole .

### ¶ For the Cogh or the poole .

Take polidre of Gays : and put it wppon the flesh of a Col  
uer : and yeue it ofte to polidre halke and Withe olite colite she  
shall be hoole .

### ¶ A medecyne for the podagre .

When polidre halkes fete be swollyn she hath the podagre then  
Take fresh may butter and as moch of Oylt of olyf and of  
alyn . and chaufe it Bele to gedre at the fiere and make thez ;  
of anoyntement . and anoynt the fete . iij . days . and set hir in  
the sonne . and yeue hir flesh of a cat . and if that auaytt nott  
Seth the cuttynge of a wyne . and Braupe it a bolite the swel ;  
lyng . and let hir sit wppon a colde stone and anoynt hir Withe  
butter or freche grece . and she shall be hoall .

**A** medecyne for a sekenes within the body of an hauke and it shewith not outwarde how she shall be holpen and in what maner .

**A** man may know by the chere and ungladnes of an hawke : he this infirmitie but yet it is straunge to knowe : thynges that a man may not see : in what sekenes and what maner they be greuyn and specialli When a man Wote not Wherof it cometh : mych **T** Take polbre halbe Beke wypon an henne and then make her to fast .ij. days after : to aduise Beke her wbellis . **T** the thyrde day take honny so wy and fyll her body full . and bynde her beke that she cast it not out of her body and then set her out in the sonne . and When it drawith towarde euen fede her with an hote fowle . for as I herde my magistris say and she be nott hoold herof . loke neuer odir medecyne .

**HO** the passion that Goshawks haue falling

**T** Take the Rote of small Rysches . and make Juice of hem and Beete polbre flesch thern and make her to ese it .

**T** For hawks that ben wounded .

**T** Take a Wax the fowris about the Wounde and take the White of an Egge and Oyle of Olyue . and meditt it to geder . and anoynt the Wounde and sepe it with White Wyne . vnto tyme ye se the flesch . and then put in the Wounde Escumpe salt vnto tyme the

dece flesh be Mustyde . after take enence : and cleane as myche of  
that oon as of that ooz . meditt it in fece . and When ye Witt a ;  
noynt the soore here yowre oyntement and anoynt it With a pen :  
till the tyme the skynne growe agene . and if ye se dece flesh ther  
on : and holt haue it a Day Take menecreke & then anoynt it  
With this Oyntement assaied and she shall be holt

### **A** medicine for an hauke that has the artetika

When ye se yowre halke fat a while the best trust it for trou  
th she hath the artetika . Therefore do let hir blowe in the Original  
Rayne . and after that geue hir a frogge for to eete . & she shall  
be holt

### **A** medicine for an hauke combred i the bowillis

When yowre halke is Encombred in the bowillis ye shall k ;  
naw it by hir Eynes . for hir Eighen Witt be deake and she Witt  
looke vngladi and hir metessing Witt defoule hir fountament .  
Then take the halkes meete and anoynt it With powder of can ;  
nell and geue it hir to eete . and she shall be holt .

### **A** medicine for an hauke that has the goute

Take yowre halke With an Irehn onys or swyes . & it shall  
holpe hir :

## A medecyne for an hawke that hath mites .

Take the Juice of Wormelbode and put it ther thay be and ther shalt dye .

That an hauke vse hir craft all the selon to flye or lefe .

When ye go to the felde in the latter ende of halbyng and desi-  
re that yowre halke shall vse hir craft . Do to hir in this ma-  
ner let hir sle a fowle . and let hir plym wypon it as moch as  
she wyl . and When she hath plymmed ynough go to hir softely  
for frayng . and rebarde hir on the fowle . and after that ye  
may cast hir on a perch . & aswell she may vse hir craft so . as  
that she slew all the yere .

## A medecyne for an hauke that has the Croon

Anoynt hir fundament With Oyle . and put the powder of  
alym With an hole straw .

Also take an herbe callid cristis lardder . & anoynt hir molle  
the Within and she shall be holt .

Also take smale flambe rotis and polipodi and the cornes  
of sporge and grinde it weel and seeth it in butter . and dralbe  
it through a clooth . and make thref . iij . pellettes of the grette ;  
nes of a Mot . and put it in his mouth in the morowte . and lo-  
ke that she be wyde . and then let her fast till euensong . and fede  
his littill and littill . and she shall be holt .

## **A** medecyne for vermyñ .

**T**ake the Juice of the Roote of ffenell . and w<sup>th</sup> it Blere the vermyñ be . and thay shall dye .

## **A** medecine for the Reume that haukis haue

**W**hen ye se yowre hauke cloose her Eyghen . and shaketh hir be ;  
we . then bath she the Reume in the hede . Therfore geue hir larde  
of a gote the first day and the secunde geue hir epatike With the fle  
sh of a chycon and she shall be holt .

**A** medecyne for haukis that bene dry and de  
spere to drynke , to hepe hem moyst in kynde .

**T**ake the Juice of haarbounde and Beete thyn hallys me  
te thez in . and fede her therwith onys or wybes . and she shall  
be holt .

## **F**or seknes that hankis haue i their Entrellis .

**A** halke that is seke With in the trayles : is of an odes  
aray then in odes sekneses . for if she holde not hir me ;  
te bot cast it . that is tokyn of the foule glet . for surfete of fedetis  
that be geuen to thalakis in theyz yowth and afterwarde When  
they come vnto trauaplt . and ben annoyed of the Reuer then  
they wopen slow to flye and desire for to rest . and When trauke  
is wypon hir perch then she wylt slepe for to putoues . at thanting

and if she holde flesh any While in hir goorge : it Will loke as  
it Wor sooden and When she is Baked she assapeth to put ouer  
of thentrynng . and it is agluttide and colde : With the glett y<sup>e</sup>  
she hath engenderid . and if she shulde asape she most put ouer .  
or ellis she most dye . or cast it and if she cast it she may be hple  
pe With the medecyne .

### ¶ A medecyne for the Entrepllis .

Take pollps of Egges rawe . and When they be Wele beaten  
to geder . put therto spanyshe salte . and as much hony therto . &  
Beete therin thy flethe . and fede thyn halbe . iij . days therewith  
and if she make daunger to eete it . let holde thyn halbe . and  
make hir to swalow . iij . or . iiii . morcellis in a day . and searli  
she shall be hoolt ¶ Wit I shall say to yow a nother thyng . ta  
ke hony at the chourngng of the moon . and a kene nettyll and  
therof make small powdre and When it is Well grownde . take y<sup>e</sup>  
best boon of an henne . and a nother of a coluer . and bakke it  
With a knyfe . and do away the styune . and do thren the powdre  
and all hote With the powdre fede hir . and do so thres . and  
she shall be hoolt .

### ¶ For lehenes of Swelling .

Iff an Wicked felon be swolln in sich a maner y<sup>e</sup> a man  
may hett it . that the halbe shall nodye thus a man may hel  
pe hir strongly . and lengthe hir lyfe . bot the halbe Will be de  
ye eggs and gletous of the fekenes . and therfor pe moost

Take the Rote of comfory and sugre sliche mych . and sethe  
it in fresh grece With the thirde parte of hony . and then draw  
it thowgh a sayre clooth . and oft yeue it to the halke and she  
shal amende .

## For blaynis i haukes monthes cald frouches

Off the frouches it is dredd for halkes . for it is anoyus  
seknes . and drawith hir to deeth . and With holdeh hir streng;  
the . for men sayn that it comyth of colde . For colde doth haue  
kes mych harme . and makyth flethome faitt olde of the brayne &  
the Eyghen With swett and empyre in her hede . and tof she ha;  
ue hasteli helpe it With stoppe her nase thrillis . And therfor  
Take Fenell Marzall and Reris ilich moch . and sethe it &  
draw it thowgh a cloth . and ozeWhales: Wash her hede therw<sup>t</sup>  
and put som in the Roofe of her mowth . and she shall be saafe

## A medicine for an hauke that castis hir fleth

Wete hir flethe in sarfoit oz ellis seeth Rasue in Water and  
put her flethe therein : When it wylith .

## A medecyne for the Reume clepid Agrum

When thou seest thy hauke wypon his mouth and his che  
his blobbed . then she hath thys seknes calde Agrum . Therfor  
take a newt of slauer and hite it i the fire . and brynne the Ma;  
rollis thowgh olde . then anoynt is With oyle of Olyff .



## **C** For to make an hawke grete and fatte .

**T**ake a quantyte of porke and ony and butter ȝliche my;  
che and praged grece and do a Bay the skynne . and sethe hym  
to geder . and anoynt thy flesh therin . and fe de polvre halke  
therwith . and she shall encrece myghtely . Ellis take the Wyn;  
ges of an Eued . and fe de hiz and kepe hiz from trauestt and  
do so ofte though the eued be neuer so fatte . and if polvre hal;  
ke be not passing fat Within a fortenet Bondre ȝ thynke .

## **C** For booches that growe in an hawks Jowe

**C**utt theys botches With an knyfe . and let olte the mater  
of thym . and after clense thym clene With a sbluez sponne or  
ellis fille the boott With a polvre of arnemelit ȝ brent . and up  
pon that polvre do a littill larde : that is resside and so it Will a  
Bay .

**H**ere is a goode medecyne for an hawke that  
Wll not coom to Reclayne .

**T**ake fresh butter and put ther to sugre and put it in a cle  
ne cloth and Reclayne her to that and kepe it in a box in you  
re . tagge .

## **A** medecyne for hawks that bene Restreyned .

**W**hen ye fe polvre halke Mesynge and Castynge Bat though  
her Mostrelus or hiz name then colbeles she is Restreined .

For that sekeneſſe : take ye greynes of ſhaſſelegre and of pepper and grynde it Well . and temper it With ſtrong wynegre and put in hir Nares and in the Rooſſe of hir mouth and geue hir fleſh to ete . and ſhe ſhall be ſaaff .

**A** medecyne for hawks that haue payne in theyr croupes .

**W**e ſhall take ſayre Morſhan and poude of geleſre : and medditt it to gedre . and geue it to yowre halke to ete . and if ſhe holde it paſt the ſeconde day after . ſhe ſhall be hoole .

**A** medecyne for the ſtoone in the fundement

**W**hen yowre halke may not meteſe then ſhe bothe that ſekeneſſe calde the ſtoon . And for this ſekeneſſe : ye ſhall take the hert of a ſwyne and the grece of a ſwyne . and cutt it With the fleſh of the hert and ſhe ſhall be holpe .

**A** medecyne for the drye ſeouce .

**F**or thys ſekeneſſe take the Roote of pillipody that groweth wypon Olyes . and ſeth it a grete While then take it fro the fire and let it ſeonde and Wap leſſe warme . then Waſh yowre fleſh therin . and feede yowre halke . iij . tymes . and ſhe ſhall be hoole

**A** medecyne for wormys called anguelli

**T**ake puſſare made of a lombe that has bene in wynter & make therof . iij . morcellis and put it in a gut of a coluer

and fede hir therwith and loke the halke be boide W yn pe yeue  
hir thys medecyne .

**A**lso take Juice of dragonys and put full the gut of a pe;  
geon and then cut it and departe it as the halke may ouersho  
low it . and put it in his body . and knytt his beke for castyng

**A**lso yeue hir the hallockye of a Buc as hote as thay  
ben cut olde . and make powder of the pyntyllt and cast it vppō  
the flesh of a Cat . and fede hir therwith & she shall be holt .

**A**N hawke Tprith . Fedith . Goorgith .  
Behith . Rousith . Enduyth . Mutith .  
Berchyth . Jophith . Puttithouer . Proynyth .  
Plommyth . She warbullith . and mantellith .

**S**he tprith vppon Rumpys . She fedith on all maner of  
flesh . She goorgith When she fillith hir goorge With meete .  
She behyth When she fedith : that is to say she Wpyth hir beke .  
She Rousith When she shakith all hir federis and hir body to  
gedre . She Enduyth When hir meete in hir bowellys fallt to di  
gestion . She mutith When she auoydith hir order . She parchith  
When she stondyth on any maner bolke or perch . She Jophith  
When she slepith . She puttithouer When she Cuoidith hir meete  
olde of hir goorge m to hir bowillis . She proynith When she fet  
chyth ople With hir beke ou hir taylor and anoyntith hir fetz &  
hir federis . She plompyth When she pullith federis of any folle

or of any other thing and castys him from her. She Barbelyth  
Wen she drauith both hir Wyngys ouer the myddys of her boeke.  
and ther they mete both and softely shakyth them. and let hem  
fall agen. And she mantyllith Wen she stretchith her oon Wyng  
a long after her lege. and afterwarde that oother Wyng. and  
moost compnyly she doth that affore or she Barbelyth hir.

## **T**he namys of a Sparre hauke as Ostrigers and Sparuiterers haue determyned

**T**her is a question appoynted Whether a man shall call a sparre  
halke Or a spere halke Or an aspere halke. & Os-  
trigers. and also Sparuiterers: sayen she may be callid all. .ij.  
Namys. for these reasons. She may be callid a Spere halke  
for of all the halkes that ther be she is moost spere. that is to  
say moost tendre to wepe. for she leste myforytyng and mysenten-  
dyng flet.

**A**lso she may be calde an aspere halke of sharpnesse  
of hir corage. and of hir lokyng quickly. and also of her fleyng  
For she is moost asper and sharpe in all thing that belong  
vnto hir of any other halkes

**S**he may be also callid a sparre halke for. .ij. Resones. oon  
is she sparreth goshalkes and tercellys both. siche as ben in  
ther soore aage. vnto tyme thay may be Reclaymyd. and ma-  
de redy to fley. as Goshalkes and tercellys that be not ful-  
ly meded: vnto tyme they may be clare ensaymyd and redy to  
fley. for all the Whyle thay bene vna butt. the sparre halke occu-  
pythe thyseson. and fletth the pastich Weelt. that is to say from  
faynt Margarytes day vnto it be lammas. and so forth in the  
yere.

**A**nd she Wyll fley Weelt yong fesauntis: yong heth cockys

In the begynnyng of the yere . And after Michelmors When par;  
etichs passe her daunger I haue seen thm made sum to sle the pie  
sum to sle the Tele wypon the Reuer : at the Jutte . sume to sle  
the Wodecock and sum for the blacke brude and the thurstle .

**T**he Wodecock is combrour to sle : bot if ther be crafte . ther  
fore When ye come to a Wode or a quech of bushus . cast yolbre .  
sparehalke m to a tree and beete the bushes then and if any Wo  
decock arise she Witt be sure therof . **T**he most first make hir  
to a fobbe cast wv obvt of the bushes . and yolbre halke most  
fit on loofte as ye make hir to a partriche . Also as I sayde ye  
may call hir a spare halke : for an ower cause . for and ther Woez  
a shype fraught full of halakis . and no thyng ellis . and ther We;  
re a spare halke among thaim thz shuld no custom be payd be  
cause of hir . And so for the most comune name thay be cald spa  
re halkes for the resones a forsayd .

**A**n hawke flieth to the new to the Beke . or  
to the Toll . No Crepe Querre Fer Jutty at

**A**ll halke fleeth to the Rpuer dyuersis Ways . and sle;  
the the fobbe dyuerli . That is to say she flieth to the Wds  
or to the beke . or to the toll . & all is bot oon . as ye shall knowe  
here after She fleeth also to the quarre : to the crepe . and no mo  
Ways bot thos . in . And she Nymmyth the fobbe at the fer Jut  
ty or at the Jutty ferre .

**N**ow shall ye know what theis termes betokyn  
a moo folowyn . as Hut . Jutty ferre . Mounte  
Raundon . Crepe . Ennewed .

**A** Goshalke or a tercell that shall flee to the Erle . to the  
toll or to the take . in this maner she is taught ye most  
fynde a folde in the Ryeuz or in a pitte praeli . and then sett  
pouze haue a grete space of . wpon a mooll hilt or on the grow;  
nde . and crepe softeli towarde the folde : from pouze halke  
streight way . and When ye come almost ther as the folde lyeth .  
looke backeward to ward the halke . and With pouze hande or  
With pouze tabuz styke : becke pouze halke to come to pou . and  
When she is on Wpnyng . and comyth low bi the grounde . and is al  
most at pou . then smyte pouze tabuz . and cry huff . huff . huff  
and make the folde to spryng . and With that noyse the folde wil  
rise and the halke Wpnt nym it .

**A** And now take heed . If pouze halke nym the folde at the  
fer side of the Ryeuz or of the pitte from pou . Then she sleeth the  
folde at the fer Jutty . and if she flee it wpon that side that ye ben  
on . as it may haue dyuerse times . Then ye shall say she hath sle  
en the folde at the Jutty ferry .

**A** If pouze halke nym the folde a lyste : ye shall say she to ;  
ke it at the mounte or at the souce .

**A** And if the folde spryng not but flee a long after the Reu  
and the halke nym it then . ye shall say she slew it at the Raim  
wñ .

## **C** Crepe .

**A**nd pouze halke fleeth at or to the Crepe When ye haue pou  
ze halke on pouze fyst and crepe softeli to the Ryeuz or to the  
pit . and sleuth softeli to the bynke therof . and then cry huff .  
and bi that meane Nym a folde . Then it is slayn at the Cz  
ep ome at the fer Jutty . or at the Jutty ferry . as a boone is sa ;  
pe .

**A**nd if it happen as it dooth of times the folle for feere of polbre halbe Wolt spring and fall agen in to the Rpuer . or the halbe sees his . and so he stytt and dare not arise . ye shall say then polbre halbe hath embred the folle in to the Rpuer . and so shall ye say and the: be moo folles in the Rpuer then that polbre halbe nymmpth if thay are not arise for feere of polbre halbe

### **A** thete .

**U**nderstonde ye that a Goshalbe shulde not flie to any so: bole of the Rpuer: Wich tellis in no Wise . and the:fore a Goshalbe is calde a theef .

### **Q**uerre .

**A**nd polbre halbe fleeth to the querre . When the: be in a sto built tyme Sordes of mallardes in the felde and When the: espith the: in and commyth ouer the: selfe . and she preupli wondered ges or lald bi the: gwolde . and nym oon of the: . or thay arise then ye shall say that the: folle Was slayn at the querre .

### **M**erke this terme draw

**S**om folke mysuse this terme draw . and say that thay: haue the Witt draw to the Rpuer . And that terme draw is propuzli assigned to that halbe that Witt flee a Roke or a Cow or a Reupn : wypon a londe stryng . and then it most be sayd that such an halbe Witt draw Witt to a Roke .

**N**owe ye shall vnderstande if a man will make  
an hawke to the querre in this maner he most do

**T**ake a tame Malarde and set hym in a fayr playn . and  
let hym goo where he Witt . then take yolwe halke vpon yolwe  
fist . and goo to that playn . and holde vpon yolwe hande a praty  
Way of from the Malarde . and looke if the halke can espye it .  
by hir albyn corage and if she haue folude the folde and desi  
re to flee ther to . let hir flee it . and plymme Wett vpon hir .  
and sesue her so . ij . or . iij . tymes and then she is made to the  
quarre .

**I** haue knalbyn gentylmen that whynsoeuer and wher soeuer  
they se any tame Dookes . and if theyr halbys wolde desire  
to thaim . then theyr wolde let flee to theym in coragynge theyr  
halbys to be beett fleynge to the quarre an ower tyme .

**A** praty craft to take an hawke that is brokyn  
owt of mew . and all maner of fowlys that lyt in  
trees if a man wyl.

**D**ooke where an halke perchith for all nyght : in any ma  
nez place . and softe and layserly clymbe to her with a scon  
ce or a lanterne that hath bot oon light . in yolwe hande and  
let the light be towarde the halke so that she se not yolwe face  
and ye may take hir by the leggs or ower wise as ye lyst .  
and in lyke wise all ower maner folde .



## Of hawkys Bellys .

**T**he bellis that polbre talke shatt wher looke in any Bi:  
se that thay be not to buy ouer hir polbre to Bepz . al  
so that noon be buyez then an othez bot like of Bepght .  
Looke also that thay be sonolbre and Well solndyng and shil  
and not both of oon solne : bot that oon be a semptoyne vnder  
a noez . and that thay be hoole and not brokyn and speciali  
in the solndyng place . For and thay be brokyn thay bytt sol  
ne fult dulli .

**O**ff spare talke bellis ther is chooce and lyttill of charge  
of thaym : for thz beeth plenty .

**B**ot for Boshalkes somtyme Bellis of Melen Were  
calde the best . and thay be fult goode for thay comunely be sol  
nden with siluer and solde thz after . Bot thz be now used  
of Duchelande bellis : of a tolne calde durdright . and thay  
be passing goode . for thay be Wele sortid Well solnded . sonol  
re of Rynngyng in shilnes and passing Well lastyng .

**H**ere endyth the pweis of talke . And now folows  
the naampes of all maner of talkeys & to whom they belong .

## ¶ Theys haukes belong to an Emproure

**T**heys be the names of all maner of halbes . First an Eagle . a Haltere . a Melobne . The symplest of theis . iij Witt flee an Hynde calfe . a Falbñ . a Roo a Kydē . an Elke . a Crane . a Bustarde a Storke . a Swan . a Fop in the playn groundē . And theis be not enlured . ne reclaymed . by cause that thay be so wonderfule to the perch portatiff . And theis . iij . by thez nature belong to an Emproure .

## ¶ Theis haukes belong to a kynng .

**T**her is a Gefalben . a Tercell of a gefalben . And theys belong to a kynng .

## ¶ For a prynce .

**T**her is a Falben gentill . and a Tercell gentill . and theys be for a prynce .

## ¶ For a duke .

¶ Ther is a Falben of the rock . And that is for a duke

## ¶ For an Erle .

¶ Ther is a Falben peregryne And that is for an Erle

## ¶ For a Baron .

¶ Also ther is a Bastarde and that hauke is for a Baron

## Hawkes for a knyght

**T**heze is a Sacre and a Sacrei . And theise be for a Knyght .

## Hawke for a Squyer .

**T**heze is a Lanare and a Lanrett . And theise belong to a Squyer .

## For a lady

**T**heze is a Merlyon . And that hauke is for a lady

## An hawke for a yong man

**T**heze is an Hoby . And that hauke is for a yong man  
And theise be haukes of the coloure : and ben both Flurid to be  
iawe and reclapmed .

## And yit ther be moo kyndis of hawkes

**T**heze is a Goshalke . and that hauke is for a yeman

**T**heze is a Tercell . And that is for a polbere man .

**T**heze is a Spere halke . and he is an halke for a prest

**T**heze is a Mustypte . And he is for an holiwater clerke  
And theise be of an oer maner kynde . for thay flie to Quez  
re and to fer Zutty and to Zutty fferry .

**E**xplicit .



**L**pke Wif as i the booke of halbyng aforesayd are Brityn  
 and noted the termys of plesure belongyng to gentill men  
 hauyng delite thern . In thesame maner thys booke folowynge  
 shewith : to sych gentill persons the maner of huntynge for  
 all maner of bestys . Whether thay be Beestys of Venerie . or  
 of chace . or Rascall . And also it shewith all the termys co  
 uenient as Well to the hobyndys as to the bestys aforesayd .  
 And in certayn ther be many dyuerse of thaim . as it is de  
 clared in the booke folowynge .

### Bestys of venerie .

**W**heresoever ye face by fyrth or by felt  
 My dere chylde take hede howe I stream dooth you tell  
 How many maner bestys of venerie ther were  
 I pteyn to polbre dame and she shall yow lece  
 Fobre maner bestys of venerie there are  
 The first of thym is the . best . the secunde is the hare  
 The thre is oon of the . the Wolff and not oon moe

### Bestys of the Chace .

**A**nd Where that ye cum in playne or in place  
 I shall yow tell Which be bestys of enchace  
 Oon of thym is the . Bucke . a nother is the Doo  
 The Fox and the Mastrey . and the Wilde Roo  
 And ye shall my dere chylde other bestys all .  
 Where so ye hem fynde Rascall ye shall hem call  
 In fyrth or in felt : or in forest I yow tell .

## Note here the aage of an hert .

**A**nd for to speke of the hert iff ye will it lere  
Ye shall hym a . Calfe . call at the fyrst yere  
The secunde yere a . Boker . so shall ye hym call  
The therde yere a . Spayad . lerneth thus all  
The folowith yere a . Stagge . call hym by any way  
The fith yere a . grete Stagge . yourr dame bidde yow say  
The vi . yere call ye hym an . hert .  
Doth so my childe wylis ye been in quart

## To knowe the hede of an hert . & that is dyuerse

**A**nd of the hony that he then berith a wote .  
The fyrst hede shall be Jugett wth othe  
Thez in spynyn wee suche dyuersite .  
Mathes the . vi . yere euermoore at the leest  
Thez shall well Juge the pryce of thesame best  
Whn he hath Montelere wth othe any lere  
Kyall and Suzriall also there Jett  
And that in the toppe so Whn ye may hym lere  
Then shall ye call hym forchyd an hert of tenne  
And Whn he hath in the toppe . iij . of the selue  
Then ye shall call hym twchid an hert of . vii .  
And afterwarde in the toppe Whn thez . iiii . bene  
Then shall ye call hym sommyd an hert of . xvi .  
And from . iiii . forwarde Watt so befall  
Be he neuer of so many ye shall hym summed call  
Kyght of the nombre eyn that he is  
Callith hym from . iiii . forth summed Jwys  
Also haue ye sele an hert heded Wele .

**A**n Heerde . A Beve . A Sounder . A Route .

**C** My chylde callith hards of hert and of hynde  
And of Bucke and of doo Where yo hem fynde  
And a Beue of Roos What place thay be in  
And a Sounder ye shall of the Wylde fynde  
And a Route of Wolves Where thay pssin inne  
So shall ye hem callt as many as thay bene

**A** Littill herde . A myddyll herde A grete herde

**C** . pp . is a littylt herde though it be of hyndis  
And . pl . is a myddylt herde to callt hym be leyndis  
And . lxxx . is a grete herde callt . ye hem so  
Be it hert be it hynde bucke oz ellis doo

**How** ye shall say a grete hert & not a fair & oder

**C** A grete hert When ye hym se so shall ye hym callt  
Bot neuermore a fayre hert for no thyng that may be fallt  
A grete hynde a grete bucke and a fayre doo  
My sonnys Where ye Walke callt ye hem so  
So ye shalde naame sich dre: and do as I yow lece

**C** What is a beuy of Roos grete oz small

**C** And sey is a beue of Roos on a wibe  
And . p . is a myddylt beuy full Bele I it kalbe  
A grete beuy is . yn . When thay to gedre be  
And so callt hem sonnys Where that ye hym se  
The moore nombur than yowis : the gretter the beuy is

## What is a Sounder of swyne grete or small

**T**welve make a Sounder of the Roode swyne  
For a medyt Sounder What place thay be inne  
A grete sounder of swyne . pp . ye shall call  
Foz geet not this lession for thyng that may fall  
Thinke What I say : my sonne nyght and day

## Of the Roo hunting . brekþng . and dressþng

**W**hen ye hunt at the Roo then shall ye say choore  
The crossies and tresones yowre houndys byfoore  
A grete Roobucke ye call hym not so  
Bot a fayre Roobucke and a fayre doo  
With the towbellis and With the blood  
Reuarde ye yowre houndes my sonnys so good  
**A**nd eche foote ye shall cutte in . iii . I yowr heme  
Take the towbellis and the blood and do all to gedre then  
Peupth hit than to yowre houndys so  
And moche the glaadder then thay will go  
That to yowre houndes a reuarde is call  
Foz hit is eten on the ground and on the steyne dulle  
**T**he Roo shall be herdled by weneri I bene  
The . ii . forther legges the hede layde by ebene  
And take oon ender legge wop I yowr pray  
And that oder forder legge right as I yowr say  
wpon the oder forder legge woth ye hem pyte  
And With that othez forther legge wop ye hem knytte  
Don thys maner thus When ye haue broght  
All hool to the Rechen then hit shall be broght  
Sane that yowre houndes ete : the towbellis and the fete .



## Now of thage & undoing of the boore

**M**ow to speke of the boore the fyrst yere he is  
A pygge of the Sounder called ale haue 3 blis  
The secunde yere an hogge and so shall he be  
And an hoggestere When he is of yeres . iii .  
And When he is of . iii . yere a beore shett he be  
From the Sounder of the slypne then deyrith he  
A Spnguler is he so : for a lone he Witt goo .  
**W**hen ye haue slayn the boore and Witt to hym right  
Ye shall vndo hym vnflayne When he shall be dight  
Xij . breeds and . ii . of hym ye shall make  
By the law of venery as I dare vnder take  
Thurgh yowre houndys by strength iff that he be dede  
They shall haue the bolyllis boyle With the brede  
Cast vpon the grounde thur the boore Was slayne  
And that is calde a Rewarde so hunteris it sayne  
vpon the erth so haue 3 blis : for that so wten is

## Now of the hare .

**M**ow for to speke of the hare my soumys seareli  
That best kyng shall be calde of all venery  
For all the fayre spekyng and blawng leif sere  
Commyth of sedyng and fyndyng of the hare  
For my leif chyldez I take it on honde  
He is the meruellest best that is in ony londe  
For he fymaes and crotis and Roungeth euermoore  
And beareth talow and gas : and a boue teeth both be foore  
And othez While he is male : and so ye shall hym fynde  
And othez While female and kyndelis by kynde

**A**nd When he is female and kyndelis hym With in  
In . iij . degrees he hem beith or he With hym ellyn  
Too Rough and . ij . smoth Who With hym se  
And ij . knowis also that kyndelis With be  
When he is female so tell I my tale .

### **T**he rewarde for howndys .

**W**hen yowre howndis by strength hath done hez to de  
The hunter shall rewarde hym then With the hze  
With the shulders and the sides and With the kyllis all  
And all thyngz With in the Rombe save onli the gait  
The pounce also : yeue hym noon of thoo .  
With rewarde When con the earth it is all .  
With all good hunters the . halow . it is call  
Then the loynes of the hare loke ye not forgete  
Bot bring hym to the kechyn for the lordis meeete  
And of this ilke hare speke We no more .

### **W**iche bestes shall be flayne a wich Crippe

**H**old to speke of the bestes When they be flayne  
How many be strypte and how many be flayne  
All that here shyne and talow and Rounge leue me  
Shall be flayne save the hare for he shall strypte be  
And all that berth grece : and piles they pypon  
Ever shall be strypte When they be vndon  
On theys maner play : thus ye shall say .

## Whiche beestis shall be reide with the lymex .

**C** My dere sonnys echeon now Wilt I yow leve  
Hob many maner beestys as Wilt the lymex  
Shall be vnterprete in fryth or in felde  
Booth the hert and the bucke and the boore so Wilt  
And all other beestys that huntid shall be  
Shall be sought and founde Wilt Ratchis so fre  
Say thus I yow tolde : my childer so tolde

## The discreuyng of a Bucke .

**C** And ye speke of the Bucke the fyrst yere he is  
A fadone. solbkyng on his dam say as I yow Wilt  
The secunde yere a preket. the .iij. yere a solbrett  
A solbre at the .iiii. yere the twolthe I yow tell  
The .v. yere call hym a Bucke of the fyrst hede  
The .vi. yere call hym a Bucke and so as I you rede

## Of the hornys of a Bucke .

**C** The hornys of a grete Bucke or he so be  
Most be summyd as I say herkenyth to me  
Too braunchis first palmyd he most haue  
And .iiii. avauncers the soth iff ye Wilt saue  
And xxiiii. espelers and then ye may hym call  
Wher so ye be a grete Bucke I tell yow all

## Of the Roobucke .

**C** And iff ye of the Roobucke Wilt knowe the name  
The first yere he is a kyde soukyng on his dame

The seainde yere he is a gerle : and so he siche all  
 The thirde yere an hennule loke ye hym call  
 Robucke of the first hede he is at the iiii . yere  
 The . v . yere a Roobucke hym call I yow lete  
 At saynt andrews day his hornys he with cast  
 In moore or in moos he hidyth hem fast  
 So that no man may hem sone fynde  
 Ellys in certayn he does not his kynde  
**A**t saynt Jamys day where so he go  
 Then shall the Roobucke gendre with the Roo  
 And so boldly ther as ye durme  
 Then is he cald a Roobucke goyng in his turne  
 And iff ye may a Robucke sle with othe any fayle  
 And ye fynde that heue grece at his tayle  
 Als sum Robuckys haue when ye hit fynde  
 Then shall ye see it as ye do of hert and of kynde  
 Also the Robucke as hit is wele kynde  
 At holprode day he gooth to Ryde .  
 And wiche the bit : when he may gete hit

## Now of the hert and of the kynde .

**A**Sonys of the hert and the kynde leme yit ye may  
 Ther thay draue to the herte at holi roode day  
 To the stepe then thay goon yche hote day at noon  
 Which stepe thay wsen my childer I yow say  
 Tilt hit be Mydasomere at the last way  
 The cause of the stepe is to bere hym fro the flee  
 Who so commyth to that place may se hit with his iche  
 An other thyng thay wse my chylde also  
 The same seson of the yere to soyle to go

## Of the cryng of theys bestya .

**A**n hert beladye and a bucke growys I fynde  
And iche Roobucke certayne tellis by kynde  
The noyes of theys bestys thus ye shall call  
For prynces of theyre make thay wsen hit all  
Say chyldre Wtere ye goo : yobere came taght you so

## Merke well theys lesens folowynge .

**T**yme of grece begynneth at mydsomer day  
And tyll holi Rooder day lastyth as I you say  
**T**he seson of the fop fro the Natyuite  
Tyll the annunaciacion of olore lady fre  
**S**eson of the Roobucke at Ester shall begynne  
And till mychelmas lastith nygh or she blypne  
**T**he seson of the Ros begynneth at Michelmas  
And hit shall endure and laste vntill Candilmas  
**A**t Michelmas begynneth huntynge of the hare  
And lastith till mydsomer thez nyll no man hit spare  
**T**he seson of the Wolfe is in iche cuntre  
At the seson of the fop and euermore shall be  
**T**he seson of the boare is from the Natyuite  
Till the purification of olore lady so fre  
For at the Natyuite of olore lady sbete  
He may fynde Wtere he goth vnder his feete  
Booth in Bodys and feldis come and oore frute  
Wben he after foode makyth any sute  
Crabbs and acorns and nottis thez thay growe  
Halys and hoxpes and othez thyngs ynole  
That till the purification lastys as ye se  
And makyth the Boote in seson to be  
For Wbile that frute may : laste his time is neuer past

## Of the hunting of the haare

**N**ow to speke of the haare how all shall be brought  
When she shall with houndes be founden and fought  
The first worde to the houndis that the hunt shall obtē pit  
Is at the kennell doore when he openys it  
That all may hym here: he shall say ariere.  
For his holdnes holde cum to hastely  
That is the first worde my sonne of venery  
And when he hath couplyd his houndes ychoon  
And is forth with hem to the felde goon  
And when he has of cast his colples at wiff  
Then shall he speke and say his holdnes tiff  
Hors de couple auant se auant elris so  
And then So ho so ho. thries and no mo  
And then say. Sa sa cy auant So how I you pray  
And iff ye se yolre holdnes haue goode wiff to renne  
And draw a baywarde fro yow say as I yow kenne  
Here how am y. agayne hem call so  
Then. Sbeff mon am ybeff. to make hym soft go  
And iff any fynde of the haare thez he hath bene  
And he hight Richer oz Remounde thus to hym bere  
Oyes a Remounde le vaillant. and I shall you a howe  
O' quida troy la colbarde on la court colbe  
That Remounde the worthe with obtē any fayle  
That benythy to fynde the colward with the short tayle

**A**nd iff ye se where the haare at pasture hath bene  
Iff hit be in the tyme of the corne grene  
And iff yowre houndes chace best at yowre wiff  
Then. iij. motis shall ye blade booth lowe and shiff

There oon and there an other there to pasture has  
 When say . illoques illoques in the same place  
 So say to him in kynde : onto tyme that ye his fynde  
**A**nd then cast a signe all the feld aboute  
 To se at his pasture where she hath be in or olde  
 Or at his forme for gladi to be she is not lefe  
 Ther she hath pasturid in tyme of Relese  
 And any hounde fynde or musyng of his mace  
 Ther as she hath byne and is goon olde of that place  
 Ha sy touz cy est pll . so shalt ye say  
 venez avez so hold sa . also lorde as ye may  
 Sa cy ad este so hold . after that  
 Sa sa cy auant . and therof be not lat  
 And when ye se onto the playne her at the last  
 In feld or in errabult londe : or in to the Wode past  
 And yobre hounde Wilt fynde of her ther then  
 Say . la douce amy la est a . and so as I yob ken  
 That is to say swete frende : ther is he come hold  
 For to dry here . and ther with ye shall say so hold  
 Illoques ey douce ey waylaunt so hold so hold . then they  
 Thus may ye now dere sonnyes lerne of venery  
 And when ye come ther as ye trow be Wilt dwelt  
 And so semeth to yob Wilt then say as I yob telt  
 La douce la est a venez . for to dwelt thore  
 And therwith . in . so hold . say ye no moore  
 And iff it semes Wilt yob to fynde all in fere  
 And Venen so to do then say . douce hold here hold here  
 Hold here douce hold here hold here be litty  
 So shalt ye say my chylde and for no thyng letty  
 All maner bestys that euer chasete bore  
 Have oon maner of Wode . so hold . and no moore

To fulfill or confitt eche maner of chace  
 The hunt euermore in his mowth that Word he haue  
 And iff yobbe boundys at a chace renne thes ye hunt  
 And the best begynne to renne as herttis be wont  
 Or for to hanplon as doos the fop With his gyle  
 Or for to crosse as the Roo woth oer While  
 Oer dwelt so that yobbe boundys cannot olte go  
 Then shall ye say. hoo sa amy sa sa  
 A complex sa arete so hold . sich is the play  
 And sohold as mech is as sa hold to say  
 Not for . sohold is short in speche When it is brought  
 Therefore say We . sohold bot sa hold say We nocht  
 And iff yobbe houndis chace at hert or at haare  
 And thay renne at defaute thus ye shall say thare  
 Icy sohold assayne assayne ston hold  
 Sa assayne arete sohold theis Wordis and no moo  
 And iff yobbe houndes renne Wertt at fop or at doo  
 And so faple at defaute say thus ferther or ye goo  
 Ho to ore swef aluy douce a luy . that thay hert  
 Ho hoy assayne assayne sa arete  
 So hold so hold wenez a coupler . and do as I yobbe kenne  
 The moore Worshyp may ye haue among all manne  
 Yobbe craftis let be kynde : and do as I yobbe bynde  
 Allt my sonnys in same : and thus may ye honne of game

**T**he booke that the mayster hunter makyth to  
 his man now here foloyng ye may here .

**T**he mayster to his man makyth his Rops  
 That he knowith be kynde What the hert woyt  
 Allt huntynge euermore When he goys



Quod the man to his maister that were good loore  
 For to knowe what he does the houndes befoore  
 What doth he mayster quod the man  
 He doth quod he wynn as thow mayst se  
 Brekyth .and so doth no best bot he  
 When brekyth he quod the man what is that to say  
 With his feete he opprys the erth ther he gooth a way  
 What is the cause quod the man naister 3 the pray  
 That the hert be foore the houndes when thay hym hunt ay  
 That then to the Ryuer he wellis for to goon  
 Quod the maister to the man thez ar causes toon

**Roz. ii.** causes the hert deficith to the Ryuer . a  
 note wele theis termys foloing descende a oder

**C**on cause for the Ryuer descende he is ay  
 And so is he to the Water when he takith the way  
 Why callist thow hym . descende . mayster 3 the pray  
 For he payus of is myght the sooth 3 the say  
 A nother is to the Water whi he gooth other whyle  
 The houndes that hym sellen to founde to begyle  
**C**ut of this hert quod his man maister wolde 3 ken  
 In to the Water when he leppys what he makes then  
 He proferith quod the mayster and so ye shall say  
 For he bot not hym selfe yit how he wilt a way  
 Whether ouer the Water he wilt for passe  
 Or turne ayen thessame way thez he fyrst was  
 Therfore hit is profre as theys huntreis sayne  
 And Reprofer iff thessame way he turne ayene

At that ower side of the Water iff he cop sterte  
 Then shall go call hit the soule of the hert  
 And that is for the Water of his legges Beete  
 Solone in to the steppis ther fallyn of his fete  
 Apen the Water his Way euen off he hent  
 Then breketh he Water ther to take yow tent  
 And iff With the Water go algate yow hit shall  
 Defoulant the Water an hert so hym callt

## Now of the Nomblys merke welle the termys

¶ The man to his mapster speketh full blyth  
 Off the nomblys of the hert that he Bolde hym kicht  
 Hold mong endys ther shall be hem Wich mine  
 Quod the mapster bot can thye nor thynne  
 And that is bot the Sargilon to speke of all bi tene  
 And all theys ower . crokes and Roundulus . bene

## The Auancers . the Forchers

¶ Wit Bolde 3 Wit and thes Boldest me leere  
 The crokes and the Roundulus of the Nomblys of p<sup>o</sup> dere  
 Don croke of the Nomblys lpth euermoore  
 vnder the throote bolle of the best be foore  
 That callid is . auancers Who so can hem here  
 And the hyndermost parte of the Nomblys there  
 That is to say the Forchers that liggyn euen hit bene  
 The . n . theys of the best that ower crokes eue

In the Mynd that allid is the wondit also  
For the sides wolnde a wolde coruen it is fro  
My were sonnys wolde : say of game I thus yow to lde

**W**it Wolde I Witt maister Whi theys houndes all  
Bayen and cryen Whn thay hym ceche shall  
For thay Wolde haue helpe that is thayr skylt  
For to flee the best that thay renne tyll

**T**ell me mayster quod the man What is the skylt  
Why the haare wolde so fayne renne ayenest the hilt  
Quod the mayster for hz leagys be shorter be foore  
Then be hynde : that is the skylt. of poore

**W**hat is the cause quod the man y<sup>e</sup> men say of y<sup>e</sup> best  
That the haare sittith aye Whn she takyth hz best  
And oer bestys ly : as communeli. men sayne  
For .ij. causes quod the mayster I tell the playne  
Don is for she hurles wypon hz houghis ay  
And all other bestys : an the side to the grownde lay  
An oer cause ther is and that is noo less  
For she breath both selbet and pure grece

**W**it Wolde I mayster quod the man fayne Witt more  
Wher lyth the fuet of the haare be hynde or befoore  
Ouer the loyne quod the mayster of iche haare thow take  
By this the taylor and the chyne euen oon the backe

**W**it Wolde I mayster quod the man thas at the lez  
What thow walkest in the felde With thy lymoz  
Ther as an hze pastured hath : or y<sup>e</sup> thow hym se  
To knawe faatt or lene Wither that he be  
I can quod the mayster Best tell the thys caas  
Whate bele Wther he lay : and Wther he sumped was

Wolow and englaymede iff that it be  
Then is he fatt & the telt lerne theys of me  
And iff it be both blacke and harde and cleue  
Then he is meagre lare and leene  
And of this ilke thyng iff thou leue not me  
Take hede in the Byntre and then thou may it se

**C** Wit mayster of the haare sayn Wolde & Wit moore  
What he dooth When he gooth the houndys befoore  
The soth and resorth ther he gooth a Way  
Prickyth and re prickyth the soth for to say  
Bot Wat is that quod the man When thay so doone  
That shall I quod the mayster telt the full soone  
In the feelde Wher he gooth no Ways bene  
Ther he soth When he steppyth and hit may not be seene  
And after When he dooblyth and turnyth agaynne  
Then he resorth as goode hunteres saynne  
And When he tennyth in the Way dry or herte  
Then men may fynde fostalp of clees or of fete  
That prickyth the haare aye When he dooth soo  
And re prickyth then iff he agaynne goo

**C** Maister yit quod the man What is this to say  
A wauntellay a lay . and a Relay .  
That shall I telt the quod he : for a littill byzete  
When the houndys ar set : an hert for to mete  
And othez hym chasen and folowyn to take  
Then all the Relais thou may vpon hem make  
Even at his comyng yf thou lett thy houndys goo  
While the odes that be behynde fer arn hym froo  
That is . a wauntelay . and so thou shalt hit call  
For thay are than fer before thos odes houndys all

And an hyndering grete all oðer contit  
 For thay may not that day nomore selbe at Witt  
 And holde thyn houndes seylt iff that thow so do  
 Till all the houndes that be behynd be cum ther to  
 Than let thyn houndes all to gedre goo  
 That called is an ablay . and looke thow say so  
 And that hyndering is yit to them that be behynd  
 For the restede Witt ouer go the Wæte by kynde  
 A relay is after When the houndes ar past  
 For be fore With the hert that hiet hem fast  
 To let thyn houndes fer after hem goon  
 And that is then a forthering to hem echoon  
 For and thyn houndes haue ouertake thees oðer bi restes  
 Then shall they all folue hym of oon swestnes

### What is a forloping .

Wit mayster Wolde I sayn thus at yow leere  
 What is a forloping for that is goode to here  
 That shall I say the quod be the soch at lest  
 When thy houndes in the Wode sechyn any best  
 And the best is stolt aWay olbt of the fyrth  
 Or the houndes that thow hast meten therwith  
 And any other houndes before : than may With hem mete  
 Thees oðer houndes arn then forloped I the hte  
 For the beste and the houndes arn so fer before  
 And the houndes be kynde be Wæte and soore  
 So that thay may not at the best cum at ther Witt  
 The houndes be fore forlopne hem and that is the skylt  
 Thay be ay so fere be fore to me iff thow Witt trust  
 And thys is the forlopne leere hit iff thow lust

## Whiche thre thynges cause the houndes to endure

**W**hit Bilde 3 Berte mayster iff it Bate thy Bitt  
Whan thyn houndes renne an hert contill  
And ay the forther they goo the gladder thay bene  
For . iij . causes quod he oft tyme is sene  
Don is Whan the hert rennye fast on a rese  
He swetith that hit rennyth wolne thowgh olbt his clees  
The houndes Whan thay synde of that it is swete  
Then ar thay leuer to renne and lother to lete  
An odre cause Whan the hert ny no moore may  
Then Bitt he White froth caste ther he gooth a way  
Whan thyn houndes synde of that then ar thay glad  
In hope thay shall hym haue and renne so rad  
The . iij . cause is of the hert Whan he is nygh dede  
Then he castys olbt of his moloth froth and blade dede  
The houndes know that he shall be take soone than  
And euer the forther they goo the gladder they renne  
Thes ar the causes . iij . that causes hem gladdre to be

## Whiche best a Clau hounde takis as sone as a wiffe

**W**hat best yit mayster 3 ay it for non yit  
That moost woole all houndes rennen contill  
And also sone the slowpste shall hym ouer take  
As the swyftist shall do What Way so euer he take  
That best a Hausyn hight a Brok or a Gray  
Thes . iij . namys he bath the sooth for to say  
And this is cause threof : for he Bitt by kynde  
So thowgh thowys a Way the thyllest he may synde  
Then as the swyftist houndes may no forther goo  
Then the slowest of foote be he neuer so thow

## Why the hare fumays and croteis .

Pyt mayster Wolde I Beete Whi that men sayn  
That the haare fumays and croteys booth playn  
And all othes maner bestys that huntid be  
Fempon or fenon as Be Bele hit se  
That shall I Beett tell the quod the mayster then  
For Why that he femays and crotas Beitt I hen  
He femaith for he bezyth talow .this is no laes  
And he croteis men sayn for he bezyth gues  
And Roukis on his houghis When he lettis it go  
And bestys of fish kynde spnde Be no moo  
Hob many bestis femayen mayster sayn I Wolde lere  
And hob many fenon that Beare goode to here  
All this to tell quod the mayster I holde hit bot ligh  
All bestis that beere talow and stonde spright  
Femayen When thay do so say as I the beere  
And all odes fenon that wilken wolne theme .

## How nony maner bestis of venery Releue

How many maner bestis pit mayster me tell  
Off venery Releuen by fryth or by ffell  
To this quod the mayster I shall the answere  
Off all bestis bot . ij . the here and the haare  
From the Annunciacion of olde lady day  
The here then releues the sooth fos to say  
Till saynt Petris day and paule . and the haare right :  
From the Purificacion of olde lady bright :  
Till the translacion Releues : leue ye me  
Off saynt Thomas tice of Caunturburie .

## To vndo the wylde Boore .

**W**it my chyld of the boore for to speke moore  
When he shall be vndoone I tell you he foore  
xxxij . bredis ye shall of hym make  
Now witt you my sonnys Wit Beere ye shall them take  
The fyrst of them is the hede What euer he fallt  
An oter is the coler and so ye shall hit callt  
The sheldys on the sholderis : therof shall . ij . be  
Then eyder side of the shoyne departid in . iij .  
The prestellis and the gambons depte them . ij .  
And . ij . feletys he hath : forgete not thoo  
Then take is legges and is feete & shewth youre sleight  
For they shall of his bredys be countid for . viij .  
Departith the chyne in . iiii . peas and nomoo  
And take thez youre bredis . xxx . and . ij .  
And sayre put the grece When it is take a Way  
In the bladder of the boore my chyld I you pray  
For hit is a medecyne : for mony maner pyne

## How ye shall breeke an Hert .

**A**nd for to speke of the hert While he thynke oon  
My chyld fyrst ye shall hym fue When he shall be vndoone  
And that is for to say or euer ye hym dyght  
With in his olone hornys to lay hym vpright  
At thessay cut hym that lordys may see :  
A noon fat or leen Wyder that he be  
Then cut of the coddis the hely euen froo  
Or ye begynne hym to flee : and then shall ye geo



At chaulis : to begynne assone as ye may  
 And slyttith hym wdone euen to thassay  
 And fro thassay euen wdone the bele shall ye slic  
 To the pissitt thz the codde Was a way kytt  
 Then slit the lyfte legge euen first before  
 And then the lyfte legge by hynde oz ye do moore  
 And thees ower legges vpon the right syde  
 vpon theffame maner slyt ye that tyde  
 To goo to the chekys looke ye be prest  
 And so fleeth hym wdone euen to the brest  
 And so fleeth hym forth right vnto theffay  
 Euen to the place Wher the codde Was cut a way  
 Then fleeth theffame wyse all that ower syde  
 Bot let the taylt of the best still thz oon byde  
 Than shall ye hym vndo my chylde I yow Rede  
 Ryght vpon his adone skynne and lay hit on brede  
 Take hede of the cuttyng of theffame dede  
 And begynne fyrst to make the Erbere  
 Than take obt the shulderis . and slyttith a noon  
 The taly to the syde from the corbyn bone  
 That is corbyns fee : at the death he Will be  
 Then take obt the selbet that hit be not laste  
 For that my chylde is good for lechecraft  
 Than put thyn honde softely vnder the brest bone  
 And thz shall ye take obt therbez a noon  
 Than put obt the paunchz . and from the paunchz taas :  
 A way Wighely the Rate sich . as he haas  
 Hoole it with a fynge . do as I yow kenne  
 And With the bloode and the grece fillith hit thame  
 Looke threde that ye haue and nedelt thz to :  
 For to sew it With all oz ye moore do .

The smale guttis than ye shall obt pyt  
From hem take the maw . forget not it .  
Than take obt the leuer . and lay hit on the skynne  
And after that the bladder With obt moore dynne  
Than dresse the Nombles : first that ye take  
Dobne the auncers kerue that cleues to the necke  
And dobne With the bolthwote put them a noon  
And kerue vpp the flesh the vpp to the backe boon  
And so forth the fillittis that ye vpp are  
That fallith to the nombles . and shall be thez :  
With the neres also and selbit : that thez is  
Euen to the mydrif that vppon hym is  
Than take dobne the mydrif from the sides boote  
And haue vpp the nombles boole by the bolt thwote  
In thyn hond than them holde . and looke and se  
That all that longith them to . to gedre that thay be  
Than take them to thy broder to holde for tise  
Whylis thow them dobblift and dightis as the life  
Than a way the lyghtis . and oon the skynne them lay  
To a byde the queere my chylde I yow pray .  
Than shall ye slyt the slough thez as the hert lith  
And take a way the Eres from it and by slyth  
For sich hris bath his hert : ay it vppon  
Als men may se in the best When he is vndon  
And in the myddis of the hert a boon shall ye fynde  
Looke ye yeue hit to a lorde . and chylde be kynde  
For hit is kynde for mony malydies  
And in the myddis of the hert euermore it lies  
Than shall ye lye the skynne the teeth euen fro  
And after the Ragge boon cuttis euen also  
The forchis : and the sydes euen betwene  
And looke that yowre knyfe ay whettyd bene

Than curne wip the forchis . and frote them With blood  
 For to saue the grece . so do men of good  
 Than shalt ye cut the nek the spyes euen fro  
 And the hede fro the nek cuttyth also  
 The toong the brayn the paunch and the necke  
 When thay Wash be Weelt With Water of the becke :  
 The smale guttis to the lightis in the derys :  
 A boue the hert of the best When thow them see  
 With all the blood that ye may gete and Wynn  
 All to gedre shall be take . and layde oon the skyn .  
 To geue yowre houndes . that callid is J Wis :  
 The quyre . a boue the skyn for it etyn is  
 And Who dightis hym so by my counsaile  
 Shall haue the lefte shulder for hys traucyle .  
 And the Right shulder Where so euer he be  
 Neuenth to the foster for that is his fee  
 And the lyuer also of thessame best  
 To the fosterys knaue yeuenth at the lest  
 The nombles trussich in the skynne . and kardell hym fast  
 The sides and the forches to gedre that thay last  
 With tender legges . be doon so it shall  
 Than bring it hom . and the skynne With all  
 The nombles . and the hornes . at the lordis pate  
 Than boldly blow the price tharat .  
 Yowre play for to mynne . Or that ye come Ynne

**E**xplicit Dam Iulians  
 Barnes in his boke of huntynge .

## Bestis of the chace of the swete fewte a King.

**T**her be bestys of the chace : of the swete fewte . And  
tho be the Bucke . the Doo . the Beere . the Reyno  
the Elke . the Spycard . the Otte . and the Marton .

**T**her be bestis of the chace of the seynkyng fewte And  
thay be the Roobucke . and the Roo . the Fulmaro . the  
Fyche . the Hauke . the Graye . the Fox . the Squyrell .  
the Whylrat . the Sot . and the Pulatte .

## The namys of diuerse maner houndis

**T**his be the namys of houndes . First ther is a Grehound  
a Bastard . a Mengrett . a Mastyfe . a Lemor . a Spay  
nyell . Rachys . Kenettys . Ceroues . Bocheris houndes .  
Myddyng dogges . Tryndeltayles . and Spakherid curris .  
and smale ladies popis that beere a way the flees and dyue  
ris smale falbtis .

## The propreteis of a goode Grehound.

**A** Grehounde shulde be hewed like a Snake . and necked  
like a Drake . Foted like a Rat . Tayled like a Rat .  
Spadd lyke a Teme . Chyned like a Beme

**T**he first yere he most lerne to fede . The seand yere to fel  
de hym lede . **T**he . iij . yere he is felow lyke . The . iiii  
yere ther is noon sike **T**he . v . yere he is good ynough  
The . vi . yere he shall holde the plough **T**he vii yere he  
Witt awayle : grete bittys for to assayle . **T**he viii . yere  
likeladitt . The . ix . yere carefadytt . **T** And Whyn he is com

my n to that yere : haue hym to the tanner . **C** For the best  
hondre that eues bikke hade . aē . iij . yere he is full boode

## The propretees of a goode hors .

**A** Goode hors shulde haue . xij . propretees . and condicions .  
A y<sup>r</sup> is to Wit . iij . of a man . iij . of a Woman . iij . of a fox  
iij . of an haare and . iij . of an asse .

Off a man wolde proude and hardy .

Off a Woman fayre brestid faice of herte e esy to lip wippen .

Off a fox a faice taylor short eris With a goode trot .

Off an haare a grette eygh a dry herte . and Well rennyng

Off an asse a bigge chyne a flatte lege . and goode houe .

Wett trauelid Women ner Wett trauelid hors Bez neu goode

**A**rise early . serue god deuouteli . and the Worlde besily doo  
thy Werke Wiseli . yeuethyn almese secretly Go by the Way fad-  
ly . Answer the peple demurely . Go to thi mete appetideli .

Sit ther at discretely . Of thi tonge be not to liberalli . Arise  
se therfrom tempraty . Go to thi sopez soborly And to thy  
bede mecely . Be m thyn Jone Jocudly please thy loue du-  
ly . And slepe surely .

## Werke wele theys . iiii thynge .

**A** Ther be . iiii thynge principall to be dread of euy Wise man

The first is the curse of olbre holy sader the pope .

The secunde is thindignacion of a pance Quia indignacion  
regis uel principis mors est

The thirde is the fauor or the Wilt of a Juge .

The iiii . is Schlaunder e the mutacion of a compnatis .

Who that maketh in Cristynmas a doog to his larder .  
And in March a Solb to is gardyner .  
And in May a sole of a Whise manny's counsell .  
He shall neuer haue goode larder . fayre gardyn . Mer Be  
le kepyd coloucell .

¶ Fer from thy kynny'smen kesse the .  
Wrath not thy neighbor's nept the .  
In a goode corne cuntre threste the .  
And sitte dolne Robyn and rest the .

Who that byldys his hous all of salowes .  
And prickyth a blynde hors ouer the falowys .  
And suffrith hys Wyfe to seche mony halowys .  
God sende hym the blysse of euerlastyng galowis .

If theis be not directid then go thei at a ventyr

¶ Ther be iii . thynges full harde for to knalb .  
Wyche Way that thay Witt draue .  
The first is the Wayes of a yong man .  
The secunde the cours of a vessaylt in the see .  
The thurde of an Edder or a serpent sprent .  
The .iiii . of a foble sittynge on any thyng .

Too Wyues in oon hous . too cattys and oon mous :  
Too dogges and oon boon : theis shall neu' accorde i oon

Who that mannyth hym With his Rynne .  
And closith his croofte Wyth cheryrees .  
Shall haue many legges brokynne .  
And also full lpytth goode seruyes .

# The Compaynys of beestys and fowlyys .

a Herde of Hertis	a Pride of Lionys
an herde of all man wce	a Sleuth of Beeres
an Herde of Sibannys	a Cete of Brates
an Herde of Cranys	a Berry of Conys
an Herde of Corlethys	a Riches of Martrony
an Herde of Brenny	a Besynes of fetattis
an Herde of harlottys	a Grace of grehoundis of ii
a Mye of ffesauittys	a Nece of Grehoundis of .iiij
a Keuy of Ladies	a Coupult of spaynellis
a Keuy of Roos	a Couple of rennyng houndis
a Keuy of Quaplis	a Litter of Welpis
a Sege of hronny	a Kyndyll of pong Cattis
a Sege of betouris	a Spnguler of Kotis
a Sorde or a sute of malardis	a Dryft of tame Swayne
a Mustre of Petoekys	an Harraffe of horse
a Walke of Snyttis	a Ragg of coltis or a Rake
a Congregation of peple	a Baren of Mulis
an Epalepnyng of Larkis	a Cuppe of Beete
a Wache of Nyghtingalis	a Cuppe of haarus
an hoost of men	a Bagle of gees
a ffelishippnyng of yomen	a Brode of hennys
a Charme of Goldsynches	a badelyng of Dokis
a Cast of Brede	a Noonpacens of Byues
a Couple or a payer of totallis	a State of Prynces
a fflyght of Doues	a Thongh of barons
an unkyndenes of Rauenes	a Hrudens of wikeris
a Claterpnyng of choughes	a Supfluyte of Nunny
a Dissimulacion of breedis	a Scale of clerkes
a Route of Anyghtis	a Doctryne of victoris

a Conūtyng of prechours  
a Sentence of Juges  
a Dampnyng of Jurrouris  
a Diligens of Messangers  
an Obesians of fuauntis  
a Sete of wstheris  
a Daught of toteleis  
a Proude shylpyng of taloris  
a Tempans of wykys  
a Stalke of fostenis  
a Hoost of saudiouris  
a Laughtre of Osteloris  
a Blospyng of Cauernieris  
a Malepertznes of proleris  
a Thraue of Thmstheris  
a Squatte of Dalbrens  
a Fyghtyng of beggers  
an wntrowth of sompneris  
a Melody of Harpers  
a Pauerty of pyperis  
a soltelty of sergeauntis  
a Tabernacle of bakers  
a Drifte of fishers  
a Disgysyng of Caplours  
a Bleche of solteris  
a Smece of Cozpouris  
a Clustre of Crayps  
a Clustre of chorlis  
a Rage of Maydmys  
a Rasult of knauys  
a blissh of wyges

an wncredibilite of Cocoldis  
a Couy of partrichis  
a Sprynge of Telis  
a Desserre of Iaplynges  
a fall of Woodcockis  
a Congregation of Pleuers  
a Couert of wotis  
a Duett of Turtillis  
a Titengis of Pies  
an Ost of spawbis  
a Swarme of bees  
a cast of haukis of p<sup>r</sup> tour. ii  
a Lece of thesame haukis. in  
a Flight of Goshaukes  
a Flight of Malowes  
a wldyng of Rookes  
a Murmuracion of stares  
a Route of Wolucess  
a Lepe of Lebardis  
a Shrelbdenes of Apis  
a Skulke of Thrups  
a skulke of ffopis  
a Nest of Rabettis  
a Labor of Mollis  
a Mute of houndes  
a kenett of Rachs  
a Sute of a lym  
a Cowardnes of curris  
a Soundre of Wilde sbyne  
a Stode of Maris  
a Pase of Assis



a Droue of Mete  
a fflocke of Shepe  
a Bagle of Women  
a Hepe of chykmeps  
a Multipleng of husbandis  
a Pontificalite of prelatis  
a Dignyte of chanonys  
a Charge of curatis  
a Discrecion of P̄restis  
a Sulke of frenis  
a bhomynable sight of mōkis  
a Scott of ffygh  
a Example of Maisteris  
an Obfuans of b̄rimptis  
an Eloquens of labeyeris  
an Epeucion of Officerys  
a faith of Marchandis  
a puision of steward of hous  
a Kerff of Panteris  
a Cœdens of Selberis  
an vncredyng of Keruetis  
a Safegarde of Forteris  
a Blast of hunteris  
a Thretenyng of courteyeris  
a Promyse of Tapsteris  
a Lyng of p̄rdeneris  
a Misteleue of paynteris  
a Lash of Carteris  
a Scoldyng of Remsteris  
a Wonderyng of Tynkeris

a Waybardnes of haybardis  
a Worship of Briteris  
a Neūthriuyng of Yogoleris  
a ffraunch of Mylneris  
a Yeste of Bilberis  
a Goryng of Borchouris  
a Trynket of Corueseris  
a Flocke of Shoarneris  
a Dronkship of Coblers  
a Sulke of fopis  
a Clustre of Mottis  
a Rage of the teethe  
a Rascall of Boyes  
a Disworship of Scottis

¶ Explicit

**H**ere folow the dew termys to speke of brech:  
yng or dressyng of dyuerse beestis and fowlis & c  
And thellame is shewed of certayn fylthes .

**A**Dere brokeme .  
A Goose waxed  
a Pigge haxed and spaxed  
a Capon falsede  
a Choon frusshyd  
a Cony unlacred  
a Crane displayde  
a Curlew unioyntede  
a Ffesabnt alet  
a Quayle Byngged  
a Plouer Mynsed  
a Pegeon thpyghed  
A Ballone leechyd  
a Swanne lyste  
a Lambe schuldered  
a Kide schuldered  
an Hen spoplede  
a Malarde unbrasio  
an Heron dysmembred  
a Pecoke disfigured  
a Beture wntachid  
a Partuch alet  
a Raale brestyde  
a Wodeoke thpyghed  
an Egge Tyred  
a ffyre Tymbered

## Now of fylthes

A Salmon Chyned  
a Pyke splatted  
an Hadooke sided  
a Cheuen fynned  
a Sole loyned  
a Gurnarde chyned  
a Tenche salced  
an Ele trousoned  
a Breme splayed  
a Harbitt tusked  
a Tought gobettid

## Ye shall say thus .

An hert Herbourghith  
a Bucke lodgith  
an Esquex lodgith  
a Roo beddith  
a poman beddith  
an haare in her forme schul:  
deryng or loenyng .  
a Cony sittynng .  
a Wodeoke beekyng

**H**ere now folowng shall be shewed all the Shyres  
 And the Bysshopryches of the realme of England  
 And ye shall vnderstonde that the Shyres be Written before  
 and the bisshopryches of the same ar Writ folowng next aft  
 and then afterward ar shewed the Prouynces of this londe.

<b>A</b> Kent.	Caunturbury.	Roucheſtre.
<b>A</b> Southeſex.		Chycheſtre.
<b>A</b> Haampſyre.	Sutherey.	Wycheſtre.
<b>A</b> Wyldeſyre.	Barkeſyre.	Salisbury.
<b>A</b> Somerſete ſyre.	Dorſet ſyre.	Bathe.
<b>A</b> Deuonſyre.	Cornelwayle.	Exceſtur
<b>A</b> Eſſex.	Medelſex.	London.
<b>A</b> Northfolke.	Suthfolke.	Northwyche.
<b>A</b> Cambrýgeſyre.		Elye.

**A** Rayceſtre. Huntýngdon. Northampton. Hertford. Bed  
 ford. Rokýngham. Opynford. Lyncolne. Lyncolne

<b>A</b> Glouceſtur.	Worceſtur.	Wigorn.
<b>A</b> Herfordſyre.	Herford.	
<b>A</b> Cheſſyre.	Shropſyre.	pte of Lancaſhire.
		Cheſtre.

**A** Yorkeſhire. Stafordeſhire. Darbiſhire. Notýngham  
 ſyre. and oðer as parte of Lancaſtreſhire. Yorke.

### Prouynces of England.

Caunturbury. and Yorke. Stafford. Darby. Notýngham.  
 Northumberlond. Duſham. Weſtmerlond. Tendale. Karle



**H**ere in this booke folowynge is determyned the lynage  
of Coote armuris : and how gentilmen shall be knowen  
from vngentill men . and how bondage began first in aungell  
and after succeded in man kynde . as it is shewed in proesse  
bothe in the childer of Adam and also of Noe . and how Noe  
dwyed the Worlde in . iij . parties to his . iij . sonnys . Also  
ther be shewyd the . ix . colobris in armys figured by the . ix .  
orders of aungelis . and it is shewyd by the forsayd colobris  
Wyth ten Worthye and Wyth ten Royall . and of rigaliteis Wi;  
che ten noble and Wyth ten excellent . And ther ten here the ver  
tues of chivalry and many othe notable and famouse thyn  
gys to the plesure of noble persons shall be shewyd as the Wer  
kys folowynge Witteneses Who so euer likyth to se thaim and  
rede thaim Wyth Vere to longe nob to rehers . And after  
theys notable thynge aforesayd folowyth the Blasynge of all  
maner armys in latyn french and English .

### **I**ncipit Liber armorum .

**B**eyng in Worthenes aarmes for to bere by the Royall  
blode in ordynance all nobill and gentyll men from the  
higest degre to the lowest i this booke shall be shewed . and to  
desceue Gentilnes from vngentilnes . **I**n so moche thatt  
all gentilnes cummys of god of heuyn . at heuyn 3 Wyth begyn  
Wher Vere . p . orders of aungelis and nobl stonde bot . ix . in co  
ote armuris of knablege encrowned full hie Wyth precious sto  
nes . Wher lucifer Wyth mylionys of aungelis obt of heuyn felt  
finto hell and odyr places and ten holdyn ther in bondage . and  
all Wher creatid in heuyn of gentill nature . A bonde man or a  
churle Wyth say all We be cummyng of adam . So lucifer Wyth his  
cumpany may say all We be cummyng of heuyn . **A**d Adam the

begynnyng of man kynde Was as a stouke consprayed and son;  
flowered . and in the braunches is knowlegge Wiche is rotun  
and Wiche is grene .

**H**ow Gentilmen shall be knowyn from churlis  
a how they first began . And how Noe deuydyd  
the world in . iij . partit to his iij sonnys .

**N**ow for to deuyde gentilmen from churlis in haast it shall be  
preued . Ther Was neuer gentilman nor churle ordenyd by kyn  
de bot he had fadre and modre . Adam and Eue had nother fa;  
dre nor modre . and in the sonnys of Adam and Eue Was foun  
de both gentilman and churle . By the sonnys of Adam and  
Eue Seth Abell and Cayn deuyded Was the royalt blode fro  
the congentilt . A brother to sley his brother gerazy to the lall  
Whe myght be more congentelnes . By that did Cayn become  
a churle and all his offsprynge after hym by the cursyng of god  
and his owne fadre adam **A**nd Seth Was made a gen  
tilman throuh his fadres and moderis blissyng . And of the  
offsprynge of Seth Noe come a gentilman by kynde

**N**oe had . iij . sonnys begetyn by kynde . by the modre . ii .  
Were named Cham and Sem . and by the fadre the thirde Was  
nampd Jafeth . Wit in theys . iij . sonnys gentilnes and son;  
gentilnes Was founde **I**n cham congentilnes Was founde  
to his owne fadre wou to disaueer his preuytes and laugh  
his fadre to scorne **J**afeth Was the pongist and repreued  
his brodre . Than like a gentilman take mynde of Cham . for  
his congentilnes he Was become a churle : and had the cursyng  
of god and his fadre Noe . And when Noe alboke he sayde  
to Cham his sonne : knowyfst nott thow how hit become of

Cam Adam soon : and of his churlish bloode . All the Worlde  
is drownd saue Be . viij . And now of the to begynne ungen-  
tilnes and a cause to destroye vs all : vpon the hit shall be  
so I pray to god that it shall fall . Now to the I gyue my  
curse Byked kaytife for eu . and I gyue to the : the north parte  
of the Worlde to dralbe thyn habitation for thez shall it be .  
Wher sorow and care calde and myschef as a churle thow  
shall haue . in the thirde parte of the Worlde Wich shall be calde  
Europe that is to say the contree of churlys .

**C**aseth eu heder my sonne thow shall haue my blissing  
dere i stede of Seth Adam son I make the a gentelman to the We-  
ste parte of the Worlde . and to the occident ende : Wher as Welth  
and grace shall be . thez thyn habitation shall be . to take that othez  
thezde parte of the Worlde Which shall be calde asia that is to say  
the contree of gentelman .

**A**nd Sem my son also a gentelman I the make to multipli-  
abellis bloode that so Bykedli Was slayn . the oriente thow that  
take that othez thezde parte of the Worlde Which shall be calde affri-  
ca . that is to say the contree of tempurnes .

**O**f the offspring of the gentelman Caseth come Habraham  
Moyse Aaron and the profettes . and also the kyng of y<sup>e</sup> right  
lyne of mary . of Whom that gentelman Ihesus Was borne very  
god and man : after his manhode Kyng of the londe of Jude  
of Iues gentelman by is modre mary prynce of Cote armure .

**H**ow longe Cote armures wer begunne afore  
thyncarnacion of owre lorde Ihesu cryst .

**I**aseth made first Garget and thez in he made a batt in token

of all the Worlde . and afterwarde . ij<sup>o</sup> . yere and . xxij . before  
the incarnation of Creste : Cote armure Was made . and figured  
at the sege of troye Where in gestys troianorum it telleth that  
the first begynnynge of the labbe of armys Was . the Riche Was  
effugured and begunne before any labbe in the Worlde . both the  
labbe of nature . and before the . p . comendementis of god

¶ And thys labbe of armys Was grounded vpon the . ix . or  
x . wyys of angelis in heuen encloved With . ix . dyueris precious  
stonyes of colobris and of vertuys dyueris . also of them as fi  
gured the . ix . coloutis in armys . as in nobembre to begynne the  
first stone is callid Topasion

### ¶ Prim<sup>o</sup> lapis

The first stone is calde Topasion signyfyng  
golde in armys .

¶ This stone Topasion is a semy stone . and golde it is cal  
de in armys . The vertue ther of is : that the gentelman the Ri  
che thys stone in his cote armure brith a face messangere in his  
kyngs batyll shall be . The Rich stone is refued in the angelis  
croune that Was a kibe messanger and a suce in his kyngs ba  
tyll of heuen Whan they faught With Lucifer

### ¶ Secūdy lapis

The secunde stone is cald Smaragdus a graile  
ly stone signyfyng vert in armys

¶ The secunde stone is calde Smaragdus a grauell stone . &  
vert it is calde in armys . The vertu ther of is : that the gentyl  
man the Rich in his cote armure it brith kene and hardy in his



kyng) battell shall be . the Rich Stone is reserved in the archangel  
les crowne that Was bene and hardy in his kyngis bataille of he:  
uen Whan they saught With Lucifer

### **T**ercius lapis

**A**nd this Stone is calde brusk coloure i armys

**T**he thirde ston is calde an Smetise a duskeeli ston brusk  
hit is calde in armys . The vertue ther of is : that he the Rich be:  
rich in his Cote armur that Stone . fortunable of victori i his ki  
ges bataylt shall be . the Rich Stone is reserved to the victors  
crowne that Was fortunable and victoridous in his kyngis batail  
of heuen Whan they saught With Lucifer

### **Q**uartus lapis

**A**nd this Stone is calde pluby color i armys

**T**he .iiii. Stone is calde a Margarete a cloudy Stone Plum:  
by hit is calde in armys . The vertue ther of is . What gentilman  
that i his Cote armure that Stone with grete gouernaunce of chi:  
ualrie in his kyngis bataylt he shall haue . the Rich Stone is res  
ued in the pofestatis crowne that Was chualrieus of gouernaunce  
in his kyngis bataylt of heuen Whan they saught With Lucifer

### **Q**uintus lapis

**A** loys is calde sinamer or sanguine i armys

**T**he .v. ston is calde a Loys . a sanguine Stone or sinamer  
hit is calde in armys . The vertue therof is : the gentilman that  
in his Cote armure this Stone with myghtifull of polber in his  
kyngis bataylt shall be . the Rich Stone Was reserved in domina

cionys crowne that Was myght full of powere in his kynngys bat-  
tall of heyn Whan they faught With Lucifer

### Sextus lapis

**A**nd thys Stone is calde gowlys in armys

**T**he .vi. Stone is calde a Ruby a redly stone . gowlys  
it is calde in armys . the vertue therof is . the gentylman that i  
his Cotearmure that stone beith hote and full of corage in his  
kynngys battyll shall be . the Rich stone is reserued in the princi-  
pals crowne that Was hote brimnyng as fire in his kynngys bat-  
tall of heyn Whan they faught With Lucifer

### Septim9 lapis

**A** blue Stone it is & it is cald asure i armys

**T**he .vij. Stone is calde a Saphyre a blew Stone Asure he  
is calde in armys . The vertue therof is . the gentelman that in  
his Cotearmure beith that stone : Wyse and vertues in his Re-  
kynng in his kynng battyll shall be . the Rich is reserued to crown  
crowne that Was Wyse and vertues in his kynngys battyll of he-  
yn Whan they faught With Lucifer

### Octau9 lapis

**T**his Stone is blake and it is called Sable

**T**he .viij. Ston is a Dyamond a blake Stone : Sable it  
is calde in armys . The vertue therof is . What gentelman that i  
his Cotearmure thatt stone beith : durabull & consaynt in his  
kynngys battyll he shall be . The Rich Stone Was reserued i the  
charyngs crowne that Was durable & consaynt in his kynngys  
battyll of heyn . Whan they faught With Lucifer

## **C** 129 lapis

**A** shynng ston and is calde Siluer i armys

**T**he .ix. stone is calde Carbuncle a shynng stone. Silu  
hil is calde in armys. The vertue thereof is: What gentilman y<sup>e</sup>  
m his Colearmure this stone beath. full doughti glorious &  
shynng in his kyngys batayll he shall be. The Rich stone was  
referued in the Serophyns crowne: that was full doughti glori  
& shynig i his kyg batayll of huygn. Whan the saught W<sup>e</sup> Lucifer

**O**f the diuise coloureil for the feld of cotearmu  
eril. v. bene worthy and. iiii. bene Royall

**T**her be. ix. diuise colours for the felds of Colearmur's w  
Worthy & .iii. Royall. The .v. Worthy be theys: Gol  
de Verte Ruste Plumby & Synam. And the .iii. Royall  
be theys: Goulis Asure Sable & Siluer. Bot nobt aft bla  
feris of armys ther be .vi. colours of y<sup>e</sup> Rich. ij. be metall &  
iii. colours. Golde & Silu for metall. Vert Goulis Asure &  
Sabull for colours. & theys be vsid and no moo.

**O**f nine preci<sup>9</sup> stonil. v. be noble & .iiii. of dig

**T**her be. ix. precious stonys. v. noble & .iiii. of dignite  
The .v. noble stonys be theys Topasion Smaraginat Alma:  
the Margaret & Alloys. The .iiii. of dignite be theys Rubi  
Saphyr Diamond and Carbunull

**O**f thorderil of āgelil. v. be ierarch & .iiii. trō

**T**her be. ix. ordys of angelis. v. Ierarchie & .iiii. Trōly

The .x. Ierarchie be theys : Angelis Archangelis virtutes  
Potestates & dominacoēs The. iiii. Cronli be theys Princi;  
pat<sup>9</sup> & cony Cherubyn and Seraphyn .

**A**v. of the dignitel of regalite be noble x.iiii. &c

**A**Ther be .ix. dignites of Regalite . x . noble and .iii. ex  
cellent The .x. noble be theys Gentilmā Squier Knyght Ba  
ron and Lord . And .iii. excellēt be theys Erle Mark Du  
ke and Prince

### Nyne vertues of preci<sup>9</sup> stonys

Nyne vertues of preci<sup>9</sup> stonys ben ther . x . generall and  
iii . speciall The .x. genall ben theys A sure messenger Rene  
& hardy fortunat of victori<sup>9</sup> Cheualry of gouernaunce & myghti  
fult of polber The .iii . speciall be theys : hote of courage Wyse &  
redy & vertues in Werkyng Durable & vnsaynt fult doughti &  
glorose shynnyng .

### **A**The .iiii . vertues of cheualry

**R**oche vertues of cheualry ben ther : The first is iuste in  
his bestis . clemes of his psone . peti to haue of the pore . to be  
gracious to his pteson . to be reuerent and faythfult to his god  
The secunde is that he be Wyse i his bataill . prudent i his fightig  
knowyng & haupnyng mynde i his Wittis . The .iiij . is y<sup>e</sup> he be nott  
slow i his Weris loke be fore y<sup>e</sup> his quill be true thanke god e  
uer of his victori<sup>9</sup> & for to haue mesure i his sustināce . The .iii  
is to be strōg & stedfast i his gouēāce . to hope to haue y<sup>e</sup> victori<sup>9</sup>

And woe not frome the felde and not to shame his coleramu  
re . Also that he be not to boistfull of his manhod Like that he  
be curtes lonly and gentill and With olde stalday in his  
langage .

**H**ere shall be shewed the .ix. articles of gentil  
nes . v of them ar amorous and iiii souerayn

**T**her be .ix. articles of gentilnes . and of theym .x. bene  
amorous . and .iii. souerayn . The .v. amorous gentilneses  
ben thes Lordeli of colntenallnce Treteable in langage  
Wysse in his answer Perfitte in gouernallnce . and Thers  
full to faythfulnes . The .iii. souerayn gentilneses ben theis  
Selbe othes in sweryng . Hopom to goddis bydding . Kno  
dyng his olne birth in berying . and to drede his souerayn to  
offende .

**T**her be .ix. vices contrary to gentilmen

**T**her ben .ix. vices contrary to gentilmen of the Wiche .x.  
ben indetermynable and .iii. determynable The .x. indetermyna  
ble ben theys : oon to be full of slowthe in his Weris . an othre  
to be full of boist in his manhode . the thride to be full of colhard  
nes to is enemy . the faurth to be full of lechri in his body . & the  
fifthe to be full of drynkynge & dronckunli . Ther be .iii. deter  
mynable : on is to reuoke is olne chalange . an othre to sley his  
presoner With his olne handis . the thride to wyde from his soue  
raynes baner in the felde . and the fifthe to tell his soueraygne  
fals talys

**T**her be .ix. iestimable reioyngis in armys

**T**he .ix. iestimable reioyngis of armys ben theys  
**H**use is a gentelman to be made a knyght in the felde at batt

**T**he secunde is byelode of hym to resapue after manhode  
**T**he .iij. is chualy to do by fore his souereyn **T**he .iiii.  
 is ambassatt to be put in his honde for Wisdom . **T**he .v. is  
 prouises of knyghthode done be fore alioundis i honoz of renolue.  
**T**he .vi. is calde in armys the .vii. autentike **N**oW folowith  
 the .iiii. endyng stremptalis personall **T**he first is a wo  
 re knyght to be married to the blode Royall **T**he secunde is  
 to haue thanke of his souereyn perpetuall . **T**he .iiij. is to  
 kepe his Cote armure vnshampd m tuall **A**nd the .v. .  
 is to kepe all popntis of is knyghthod as gestys troianorum de;  
 clarith .

**K**naw ye that theis ii. orderis wer. first wedlok  
 n then knyghthode. and knyghthode was made be  
 fore Cote armure was ordened .

**T**he Was non order tot. .ij. Wedloke first and knyghthod  
 after . **A** knyght Was made before ony cote armure . and **O**;  
 lybion Was the first knyght that euer Was . **A**steriali his fader  
 come bi the right lyne of that gentelman Jafeth and saw the pe  
 ple multiplie & had no gouernez **A**nd the cursed peple of Sem  
 Weerd apenyys them **O**libion Was the serpyngest and the manful  
 lest man in his tyme **A**nd the peple cried on **O**libion to be thyr  
 maister and their gouner **A** thousand men Wer than multipli  
 ed of Jafethis lyne . **A**steriatt made to his son a garlande a  
 to wte his hede of .ij. diuers praciouse stonys in tokenyng of  
 chualia to be a gouner of a .M. men . & onto thys same day p<sup>e</sup>  
 kigh haue his name i late y<sup>r</sup> is as moch to sai p<sup>e</sup> gouñ of .iij. me

Olibion knelyd to Asterpalt his fader and askyd his blis-  
syng . Asterpalt toke Olibions swerde that Was Yafethis  
fawlbchōn that Tubalt made be fore the floode : and smote flat  
lyng . ix . tymys vpon the ryght shuldre of Olibion in toke ;  
xyng of the ix . vertuys of the forsayde precious stonys and  
gaue him his blissing With a charge to kepe the .ix . vertuys  
of charge now folowng as ye shall here .

**T**heis be the charges or artikelis that euery  
knyght shulde kepe by the dignyte of his order &  
they be ix . v . tempall and iiii goostly

**T**he . i . tempall vntuys & . iiii . goostly vntuys of charite  
the . v . tempall vertuys be theys . he shall not turne his backe  
to his enemy for to flee . The . ii . is that he shall truly holde  
his promyse to his frende : and also to his soo . The . iii . is  
he shall be free of mete and drinke to all his meny a boue him  
The . iiii . is he shall vpholde maydonys ryght . The . v . is  
that he shall holde vpon Wydows ryght . Theys be the . iiii . vertu-  
ys of chaute goostly . The first is : he shall honoure his fa-  
der and his moder . The . ii . is he shall do noon harme to the  
poore . The . iii . is he shall be mercifull . The . iiii . is he shall  
holde With the sacrifice of the grete god of heuyn . And than  
Asterpalt did make to Olibion a targett of Olyfe tree With  
ij . cornetis . ii . a bouen is face and oon wyne to the grownd  
Warde . in tokenyng that thys Olibion Was the chere of all

the blode of the .iij. sonnys of Noe By the Olif tree he woude  
 stode quietly for to Bye By the wynt of his target to the grow;  
 Under the cursed brothir Cham By the corner of his target is  
 woun furthest that othez brothir Sem. That othez corner  
 next to hym selfe betokenyth that gentylman Jafeth the blif  
 fed brothir of Whome god and man come by right lyne

**T**he maner of knyghthodis ben .ii. oon with  
 the Swerde An other with the Bath

**T**her be .ij. maner of knyghthods oon With the swerde and  
 an other With the bath The bath is the Northest by cause of  
 .iii. Royalties. Oon is Whan an onaged prynce is made kn  
 yght or be crowned kyng The secunde is Whan a kyng or an  
 Emperoure is crowned. The thyrde is Whan a quene or an  
 Emperis is crowned. The .iii. is Whan a kyng or an Em  
 peroure cum to speke With an other of dyuerse lordys

**N**yne maner of gentylmen ther bene

**T**her is a Gentyman of Bluncette and of blode

**A**nd ther is a Gentyman of bloode

**T**her is a Gentyman of Cootearmur: and theos be .iij.  
 Oon of the kyngys luge. An other of a lordeship. And  
 the thyrde is of the kyllyng of a Saryson

**A**nd ther is a gentyman contypall

**A**nd ther is a gentyman Moxafel

**A**nd ther is a gentyman Spixtuall

**T**her is also a gentyman spixtuall and temprall. and  
 all thes ben more playnly declared in this booke



## **T** Gentilmen be calde .iiii. maner of wyle one of a wncetreis and iij of Cotearmure

**T**her be .iii. diuerse maner of gentilmen . Don his a gentyl  
man of a wncetreis : With muste nedis be a gentilman of blode .  
Ther be .iij. gentilmen of Cotearmure and not of blode Don  
is a gentylman of Cotearmure of the gynges tagge . that is to  
say his deuce by an heralbd Ygouen . An other gentilman of  
Cotearmure is and not of blode a kyng geuyng a lordshipp to a  
yoman vnder his sealt of patent to hym and to his eyrys for e  
uer more he may bere a Cotearmure of the same lordshipp  
The thirde his a yoman cristenyd yif he kilt a gentylman forsyn  
he may bere the sarfyns Cotearmure and noo sarfyn a sarfynis  
cotearmure nethir cristenyd cotearmure bi feghtyng in noo wyse  
Mit sum men say that a cristen man ouercomyng a cristen man  
feghtyng in the list shall bere the cotearmure of him that is ouer  
comyn . Or if a souereyn kyng make of a yoman a knyght that  
same knyght is a gentylman of blode by the royalte of the kyng  
and of knyghthod

## **A** gentylman spirituall

**T**her is a gentylman a churle sone a preste to be made and  
that is a spirituall gentylman to god and not of blode . But  
if a gentylmannys sone be made preste he is a gentilman both spi  
rituall and temperall . Criste Was a gentilman of his moder be ;  
blue and bare cotearmure of aunscturis . The .iij. Euangelist  
with Bittenese of Cristis Barlys in the gospelt With all thap ;  
postilles . They were Yelops and of gentylmen come by the right  
lyne of that worthy queeroure Judas machabeus but that by suc  
cession of tyme the kynrade fell to puerly . after the destruccion

of Judas Machabeus and then they fell to laboris & were cal;  
de no gentilmen. and the .iii. doctours of holi church Seynt Je:  
rom Ambrose Augustyn and Gregori War gentilmen of blood  
and of cotarmures

**A**lso the diuisionys of cotarmuris be .ix. that  
is to witte .v. perfyte and .iiii. unperfyte

**T**her be .ix. dyuisionis of cotarmures .v. perfite & .iiii.  
Conperfite . The .v. perfite be theys . Termynall Colla  
terall Abstrakte Sypall and Bastard.

### **A** Differens Embordyng

**T**ermynall is calde in armys all the bretheren of right ly:  
ne hethir by fadre or by modre may bere the right hys cotarm:  
ure With a differens calde Embordyng

### **A** Differans Jemewe

**C**ollaterall is calde in armys the sonnys of the bretheren  
of the right hys beynge the cotarmuris of theyr faders With as  
differans Jemewe

### **A** Differens molet

**S**ypall in armys is calde the thirde degre by the right ly:  
ne from the right hys by line male . thay may bere there fa:  
uris cote armure With a differans molet

### **D**ifferans countercreuis

**T**he bastarde of sypall shall bere his faders cotarmure co:  
unturcreuis . that is to say What so euer he berith in his feld he  
shall bere in the colours dyuerse and no more.

## How they be .iiii. cotarmurys imperfite and be boyn wyth owte diferans

They be .iii. cotarmuris imperfite : and be borne With olde differance . The first cotarmure is if a lordshipp a fore sayde be gouen vnder patent bi the kyng . and if he die With oute hys his cotarmure is **Y don** .

The secunde is the cotarmure of the kyngs gyfte yif he dye With olde hys his cotarmure is done . and yif theys .ij. cotarmuris haue wsshels forth : the fith degre of theam bringe lyne by male be gentelman of bloode by laibe of armys

The therde cotarmure of the Sarlyn yif the cristyn man dye With olde wsshels his cotarmure is done . and if he had wsshels forth vnto the fith degre from him by right lyne of wsshels male he is a gentelman of bloode

The salubrith cotarmure of the chese bloode yif he dye With olde ony wsshels the hole cotarmure is lost than it fallith to be a cotarmure of thymperfitte bringe With a differans

All the bastardis of all cotarmuris shall bere a fesse Suall hit a baston of oon of the .iii. dignites of colouris . excepte the bastarde of the fipiales . and the bastarde of the brethymie of the cheue bloode Wher the vicaunce is departed to euych brochis e like moch theys bastardis shall add more bagge to his armys or take a bagge a bagge of armys

## Note here well who shall gyue cotarmures

They shall none of the .ij. orduris of regalite but all onli the soueraigne kyng geue cotarmuris . for that is to hym impo

wid bi talbe of armys . And yit the kyng shall nott make a knyght With olde a cootarmur by fore .

**E**uy knyght ches tyn i the felde mai make a cootarmur knight

**I**n how many places a knyght may be made

**A** Knyght is made in .v. dyuerse placis In mustering in londe of Beris . In Semblyng vnder baneris . In listys of the bath And at the sepulchur

**C**alled cootarmur is on the moderis parte

**C**alled cootarmur is cald the coote of a gentylwoman haupng byuelde weddyd to a man haupng noo cootarmur - hir sone may bere hir cootarmur With a differance of armys durynge his liue by the curtesy of lab of armys . and his sone shall none bere but so be that the gentylwoman be kyng or nept of blode to that cootarmur . Or ellis beyng hir byrth of the blode Royall and than shall hir kyng be hir cootarmur

**H**ow Gentyl men be made of Gromis that be nott of cootarmur nether blode and they be cald untriall and apocrifate as hit shewith folowng

**T**her be .ij. dyuerse Gentylmen made of gromys ? that be nott gentylmen of cootarmur nother of blode . One is cald in armys a gentylman untriall that is to say made vp among relygious men as priors Abbottis or Bysshopis . That other is called in armys a gentill man apocrifate that is to say ma

æ wypp and gowne to him the name and the lyuery of a gentyl;  
man .

**I**n armys be vi differences that is to say ii.  
for excellent and iiii. for nobullys

**T**her be .vi. Differences in armys . ii : for the excellent .  
and . iiii . for the nobles . Labell and Emborduryng for lordis .  
Jewels Molettys Floore wyce and Cuyntfoples for the  
nobles .

**I**n blasynge of armys be .ix. quadrattis that is  
to say .v. quadrate finiall and iiii. Royall

**I**n blasynge of armys ther be .ix. quadrattis for to con;  
sider .v. quadrate finiall and . iiii . Royall . If yue qua  
drate finiall be theys . Beceri . Berundi . Fretly . Beratly . and  
Erdently .

**B**eceri is called in armys Whan cootarmur is .ix. quar;  
teris dyuerse colobris .

**B**erundi is called in armys Whan the cootarmure is of .ix .

dyuerse colobris : ⁊ a fustarget With in the cootarmure of Wyatt  
colobre that hit be of

**F**retly is cald in armys Whan the cootarmure is counterseid

**B**eratly is cald in armys Whan the cootarmure is powdered  
Bot a blasar shall not say he berith Ermen . Siluer powdered  
With Ermen Bot he shall say he berith Ermen or ellis in sume  
armys he muste say demp Ermen : Wich is to sai Whithli Ermen

**I**n so moch that i the fisthe quadrat simall hit is determyned  
of the tokenys of armys . or 3 proceede to hit : is shewed Whatt  
maner of tokeny a gentylt man may Beer .

**A** gentelman mai not Beer tokenys of armys bot of steinig  
colowre . that is to say his coatarmure ynyat or ellis 3 geratt  
With precious stonys

**G**erattynge boue . .ix. bagges of coatarmuris . First With crof  
lettis . and of theym ther be .iiii. dyuerse . and the bene theys  
Cros fipply . Cros paty . Cros croflettis . and Cros flozpy

**T**he secunde baage is flovve delyce .

**T**he threde baage is roslettys

**T**he folwith baage is prymaryse .

**T**he fisthe baage is quynfolis .

**T**he septhe baage is diaclys

**T**he seuemith baage is chapelettys

**T**he .viij. baage is Molettys .

**A**nd the .ix. baage is Cressauntis that is to say halfe the  
moone . theys be polidrygis of coatarmuris .

**T**he fisthe quadrat is calde Endently of . .ij. diuse Beis  
that is to say betally lentally and fressly .

**B**ebally is calde i armys Whan a coatarmure is calde En  
dentys of . .ij. dyuerse colobris in the length of the coatarmure

**L**entally is calde in armys Whan p<sup>o</sup> coatarmure is Endentid  
With . .ij. dyuerse colobris in the berde of the coatarmure

**F**ressly is called in armys . .ij. manere Beys Fressy baage  
fessy target and fessy generall .

**H**esye bagy is Whan tokenys of armys be dis seiuered from the cheef of the costarmure to the right spleyer in the feelde

**T**hesye target is Whan a scogion or an engislet is made in the myddull of the costarmure .

**T**hesye generall is calde in armys Whan the costarmure is Endented With . ij . dyuerse colouris from the laste poynt of the costarmure to the spleyer

**T**he chefe is calde in armys the myddys of the costarmure of the right syde .

**Q**uadrat is calde in armys Whan the felde is set With sum tokyn of armys .

**A** quadrant finall is called in armys Whan the felde is discolourid With tokenis of armys haupng no beest in the felde .

**A** Quadrant Royall is calde Whan the feelde occuppeth y<sup>e</sup> token of a beest or ony othez tokyn set With in the costarmure to the nombere of fiue .

**T**he first quadrant is oon tokyn of armys allonli sett and? Whatt after his byrthe he berith .

**T**he secunde quadrant Royall is berpng in his costarmur in . thynge calde the tokenys of armys . that is to say . ij . flob : redlice in fylcys . ij . wsis . in . chapplettis . ij . lebardis . ij . ly onys . and so the . iij . quadrat Royall is to bere a beest Raun : pande : betaly . lentally . and fessely .

**H**ere shall be shewed what Cootarmuris restry : al ben and weer the blacer shall begyn to blase .

**T**hree cootarmuris be ther called restypall in armys .  
E on is Whan a cootarmure is barri of dyuerse colobris  
to the poynt . and What colobre the poynt be of . the poynt is the  
felde . Ther the blasers shall begynne .

**T**he secunde cootarmure restriatt is calde i armys Whan  
a cootarmure is paly of dyuerse colouris to the poynt . & Whatt  
pale medytt m the poynt y<sup>e</sup> coloure is the felde The blasers shall  
blase from that colobre to the next coloure pale .

**T**he thre cootarmure restriatt is calde in armys Whan a  
cootarmure is sentry of dyuerse colobris to the poynt and Whatt  
sette mydytt m the poynt y<sup>e</sup> colobre is the felde . The blasers  
shall blase from y<sup>e</sup> colobre to the next colobre of the lefte side  
of the cootarmure and blase the colobre sentri .

**M**erke what Centre Fixal Mangis Gorgis & o  
ther diuerse here now . folowynng be calde i armys

**C** Centre in armys is called stakar of tentis .

**C** Fixiatt be called in armys mylner pykes .

**C** Mangys be called in armys a sleue .

**C** Gorgys be called in armys Water bulges .

**C** Elynellis be calde in armys . iij . quadrantis truncholis .

**C** Oglys be calde in armys gonestonys .

**C** Corlettis be calde in armys Bastett .

**C** Diaclys be called in armys scoppellys .



**A** Myrtis be calde in armys merobris or glasse .

**A** Feons be calde in armys brode arow hodye .

**A** Cronkys be calde in armys any bestys hede or necke 3kett  
chagikli a sonder .

**A** Demy is calde in armys halfe a best in the felde .

**A** Countretreuis is calde in armys Whan halfe the best is of  
oon colour and that other halfe of an other colour

**A** Eny cotarmure that berith a crosse to the poynt : the poynt  
is the felde . as Seynt George berith gollis fobre anglettis  
of Siluer . but apens this rule sum blasfemis of armys repungne  
as hit is shewed in the boke folowng .

**A** This . iij . termys . of . and . With shall not be rehersed in  
armys but onys any of thaim

### **A** Ther be diuerse berynngys of feeldys

Dyuerse berynngis of feeldis ther be **A** Don is berynng hole  
felde . hit is cleppd in armys clauz

**A** The secunde is berynng too feeldis . hit is calde in armys Couili

**A** The threde is berynng too feeldis in . iij . quartels : hit is  
calde in armys quarzily

### **A** Ther bene . iij . cote armurys grytty

Thre cotarmuris grytty ther bene in armys . Don is cal:  
led chekky that is Whan the felde is chekerd With diuise colouris

**A** The secunde is caloe Wyndi that is to say Whan the felde is  
made like Balwis of oon colour or of diuerse colouris

**T**he threde is calde berry whan the felde is made like go  
bolettys of dyuerse colobris .

**I**n armys be ii. pinnyons . also it shewys wa  
clawry cownterly and quarterly bene with other

**T**he be in armys calde . ii . pinnyons Don is whan the  
feld his a saltri . Seynt andrewys crasse may be clauri co;  
unterly quarterly . Clauri is called playn of oon coloure .  
Cownterly is whan colobris quarterly be . ii . colobris sett  
in . ii . quarteris

**T**he secunde pinnyon is called cheffrounce that is a couple  
of sparis . and that may be clauri cownterly quarterly gereri  
and byally .

**G**ereri is whan . iii . cheffrounce be to gedur or moo .

**B**yatt is called whan a barre is be twene . ii . cheffrounce

**H**ere endeth the mooste spaciast thyngys of the toke of the  
lynage of Coote armuris and how gentylmen shall be know  
yn from vngentylmen . and now here folowng begynneth the  
toke of blaspyng of all man armys : i latyn french & English

**E**xPLICIT prima pars .





## Here begynnyth the blasynge of armys

**H**ave shewyd to you in this booke a soore holl gentilme  
began. and holl the lad of armys Was first ordant. and  
holl moni colobris ther be in cootarmuris. and the difference of  
cootarmuris With mony other thynggis that here needis not to  
be rehersed. Now I intende to procede of signys in armys and  
of the blasynge of all armys. Bot for to rehrece att the signys  
that be borne in armys as Pecok Pye Gaa Dragon Lyon &  
Dolphen and flobris and leups it War to longe a taryng.  
ner I can not do hit: ther be so mony. Bot here shall shortly be  
shewyd to blase att armys if ye entende diligentli to poure cu:  
rys. And be cause the cros is the moost Worthi signe emong al  
signys in armys: at the cros I Witt begynne. in the Wich thys  
nobull and myghti prynce kyng Arthure hadde grete trust so  
that he lefte his armys that he bare of. in. Dragons. and ou  
that an other shelde of. in. crolbrys. and toke to his armys  
a crosse of Siluer in a felde of verte and on the right side an  
ymage of ovre blessid lady With hir sone in hir arme. and W<sup>t</sup>  
that signe of the cros he dyd mony maruelis after. as hit is  
Writyn in the bookis of cronycelis of his tедыс Also I haue red  
thys signe of the cros to be sende from god to that blessid man  
Mercuri as Vincencius sayth. in speaulo historiali. of the mar:  
uellis deth of Julian thapostita Empoure. li.º. xº. he saythe  
thangele brought on to the foresayd Mercuri att  
armure necessari With a shelde of asure and a  
cros flua With. in. rosie of golde. as here i this  
And I fonde neuer that euer any armys War:  
sende from heuyn bot in thym Was the sygne of  
the cros. Exceptid in tharmys of the kyng of fr:  
aunce the Wich armys certanli War sende bi an a longett from he:  
uyn that is to say. in flobris in maner of Sberdis in a felde



of a fute . as hit ſhelbis here . the Wich certan ar  
mys Ware geupn to the forſayd kyng of fraunce  
in ſpaine of euerlaſtynq trowbult and that he  
and his ſucessaires all way With batartt and ſwe  
reddys ſhulde be punyſhid .



## **I** aſke here moo questionis of the crollis ſigne

**N**OW I turne agayne to the ſigne of the cros and aſke a  
queſtion : how mony crollis be borne in armys . to the Wich queſt  
tion vnder a certan nombur I dare not anſwere . for crollis  
mnumerabult ar borne now dayli . bot decendynq to eueri cros  
the Wich a fore tyme I haue ſeen as fer as I can I entende to  
diſcribe . among the Wich fiſt the playn cros ſhall be diſcribed of  
the Wich cros moo dobtis be made then of mony odyr crollis .  
for as moch as Wyſe men in blaſynq of armys holde for a we;  
ri rule that ye moost begynne to blaſe at the loweſt poynt of the  
ſheelde . if the poynt be of oon coloure . and ſo that coloure thatt  
is in the poynt of the ſheelde is the felde of the armys

**C**Bot in that rule to remeue a way all dobtis ye moſt me;  
ke dyligently : that . that rule is true With a littyll addicion . p<sup>e</sup>  
is to Witte that in armys to be blaſed it is all way to begynne  
at the poynt of the ſheelde : if the poynt be of oon coloure that is  
true : if the coloure of the poynt be more copioſe or gretter in thoſ  
armys . and then With olde dobt ye ſhall begyn ther . or el;  
lye not **C** And Weer the coloures be equall ptid othez on len  
gth or ouerwart then euermore ye ſhall begynne to blaſe thoos  
armys in the right ſide . and in that caſe ye ſhall haue no reſpe  
cte to the poynt .

**C** And iff it be aſked how berith Seynt george . it is to be

know that ye most say . latine . **C** Portat co-  
 num scutum de argento cum quadam cruce plana  
 de rubio . **C** Gallie . Il port d'argent ung croc  
 plain de goublez . **C** Anglie . He beis a fel-  
 de of Siluer With a plain cros of goubles . as he  
 we aperith in theys armys .



And the same maner of Wyse as all crossis haupng a plain  
 cros to be blased Therefore thay er : y<sup>e</sup> say Seynt george beis  
 the felde of goubles With . iii . quarters of Siluer of Whome the  
 resonis I lobue not . for by thos resonis a plain cros shuld ne-  
 uer be founde in armys nez being no differens in armys .

**C** Off an cros of an equall length on eueri parte .

A plain cros is founde in armys differynge from the first  
 cros . and hit is of an equall length on eui parte as it ap-  
 perith here . and theys armys be harder then the o-  
 ther to blase as hit is oppn . for the ends of thys  
 cros to bechis not the hennys or the utter parte of y<sup>e</sup>  
 sheeld in no parte in Wich ye shall say that he : that  
 beis theis armys . latine . sic **C** Ille portat de  
 auro cum cona cruce plana aurea equalis longi-  
 tudinis ep omni parte **C** Gallie . Il port d'or ung croc pla-  
 yn dung longuz p tout . **C** Anglie . He beith a fize With a  
 plain golden cros of equall length on euy parte . And this is  
 the differans in blasynge . that all the ends of thys cros arne of e-  
 quall length the Wich mai not be in the plain cros a fore . for the  
 foote is the lengest parte . and hit be Well made . And this disse



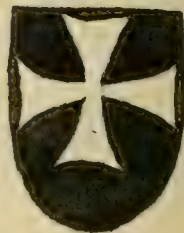
rens shall appeere better in a coat-armure : then it doth in a sheeld  
 & so ther is an euident differens be this p<sup>e</sup>. ij. crossis aforesaid

¶ Off a playn cross straple .

**T**her is an oder cross aquall strapthyr in the myddis then  
 in the otheris with oppn corneris as here not touchyng the  
 utterist parte of the sheeld in any parte ther of .

and hit is calde a cross patent . And ye shall say  
 that he the Wich beris this cross beris i this man .

¶ latine sic . Ille portat unam crucem argenta ;  
 tam patentem in campo nigro . ¶ Gallice . Il  
 port de sable unng cross patee dargent . ¶ Angli  
 ce sic . He berith Sable a cross paty of Siluer .



¶ Off a cross patent fixibyll .

**T**his cross patent is made dperse in the footo of the same  
 as hit apperith here . And then hit is calde a cross patee  
 fixible . for i the erth sych a cross may be ppehit .

in the Wich cross . in . of the heyr partes ar oppn  
 in the corneris and bradder thlan in the myddis . &  
 his foote is disposid to piche i the erthe . latine .

¶ Ille portat de rubio cum una cruce fixitua  
 de albo ¶ Gallice . Il port de gullis unng cross  
 patee fiche dargent . ¶ Et anglice . He berith Gullys and

a cross paty fixibill of Siluer . And knawe ye that ther be mo  
 ny crossis the Wich may be maade fixibill as hit shall be shewd  
 here folowpung in dperse .





Off a playn cros cordyd.

**A**Mong odyr crossis oon is foimde the Wich is cald a cord  
 did cros as here it is shewed i this cros the Wich is cal  
 d a corddid cros : for hit is made of cordys . the  
 Wich certan cros 3 se bott late : in tharmpys of a  
 nobull man : the Wich in weyr ded Was summe ty  
 me a crafty man a Koper as he hym selfe sayd .  
 And ye shall say of him that with theys armys  
 latine **C** Ille portat gobbles cum una cruce  
 plana cordata de argento . Gallice sic . **C** Il port de goullez  
 & vng cros playn corde argent . Anglice sic . **C** He with  
 gullis and a cros playn cordyd of Spluer .



**C** Off a cros playn pforatid .

**T**her is an odyr cros playn the Wich meruelusly fro the  
 playn cros of Saynt george differis . as here apperith .  
 And here it is to be merktd . that thoppnyon of  
 sum men : sayng is . that theis armys be chekkerd  
 armys . and this oppnyon is wtturli to be cepte  
 and for armys may not be chekkerd bot at the lest  
 in the nombuz of . iiii . and in a grettz nombuz  
 they may bele be made . as after ward sha ll be she  
 wed . Therfor it is to be said . latine sic . **C** Ille portat un  
 am cruce[m] argentea[m] pforatam in campo nigro . Et gallice sic .  
**C** Il port de Sable vng cros argent ptee . Anglice .  
**C** He with Sable and a cros perforatid of Siluer .



## ¶ Off a besantid cros.

**O**ver theis crossis he haue an odyr cros the which I saide late in tharmys of a certan Januens as herte it shewis And this is calde a besant cros for it is made all of besanttis . and spch a cros may be made als so; ne with lytill cakys as with besanttis . for besanttis and lytill cakys differ not bot in coloure . for besanttis be euer of golden coloure . ne the coloure of the besant shall be expressid in blaspyng of armys . for it nedis not to say a besant of golde for they be no besanttis bot of golde Therfor it is to be sayd . latine sic .



**I**lle portat unam crucem talentatam in campo tubeo . .

Gallice sic . **¶** Il port de goblez unq cros besauntee .

Anglice sic . **¶** He berith gobles and a cros besauntid .

## ¶ Off a cros flurzy .

**N**ow folowith an odyr cros flurzy . the which is so called as hit apperith herte . And therfor hit is calde de flourishyng cros . for hit has flouris in eueri ende of the arms and that is to say saue the foote . this cros flurzy sum tyme is borne in armys fixabull . And then it is calde in armys a cros flurzy fixabull . for in iij . of his endys he is flourishyng and in the foote pichabull or fixabull . Therfore it is to be sayde of him that beris hit . latine .



**¶** Portat unam crucem auream flouidam in campo auro . Et gallice . **I**l port de for unq cros flouete de dor . Anglice . **¶** He berith a sure and a cros flurzy of golde .

**A** Now here shall be shewyd of a cross fluzi patent i armys

**N**ow folowith a nod cross the which is called a cross fluzi patent . as here it apperith . And hit is calde a cross fluzi patent for he hath his endis opyn and i y<sup>e</sup> myddys of euery ende apperith an othez thryde in the maner of a flobbre as it is oppnli shewyd in this cross . Therefore it shall be sayd that the be; ter of theys armys : beis in this Wyse as folowth first in latyn thus : **A** *Portat unam crucem flouideam patentem de auro in campo asuro . Et gallice sic .*



**A** *Il port de sor. unq patee flouidee dor . Anglice sic .*  
**A** He beith asure with a cross patent fluzi of golde .

**A** We shall vnderstand here of a playn Wateri cross .

**A** Now ouer ye shall vnderstonde that ther is an othere playn cross the which certainly is calde a Wateri cross . and hit is calde a Wateri cross for hit is made bi the maner of Water troubled with wynde . as here hit shewys i theys armys . Therefore he the which beith theys armys beis in this Wyse as it shall folow first in latyn thus . **A** *Portat unam crucem planam ondofam de argento in campo tubo .*



*Et gallice sic .* **A** *Il port de goblez unq cross playn ondee dargent . Anglice sic .* **A** He beith gobles and a playn Wateri cross of Spluer .

**A**lso there is a cross that is cald muerkryt.

**I**n armys also ar founde moche crossis the which ar made of colobris muerkryt or indentit as here in thys cross appe;

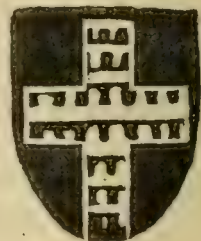
ryth And it is cald a cross muerkryt for the cause that hit has .ij. colobris . soon put in to an o;

ther. And of hym that beis theys armys ye sh; all say first in latyn thus .

**C**Portat unam crucem planam muerctam de colobris altis et magis in campo rubro . Et gallice sic .

**I**n port de gobles (ong cross playn verme dargent & sable . Anglice .

**T**he beath gobles and a cross of Siluer and Sable in; uekryt .



**O**ff an other maner cross that is cald a cross croslet .

**D**ett folowith an other cross the whiches cald a cross croslet or croslet . and hit is cald croslet for i cüz ends he is croslet as here apperis .

**B**ot this cross is not so oft borne in armys by him selfe as other crossis neuer the less mony tymys hit is borne in di; mynutiours that is to say in littyl crossis croslet

And then tharmys ar poldent with littyl crossis cruciatit . And ye shall say thus of hym yt beis theys armys first in latyn .

**I**lle portat unam crucem cruciatam de argento in campo asubro . Et gallice sic .

**I**n port asur (ong crois croicee dargent . Anglice sic

**T**he beath asur & a cross croslet of Siluer .

**A**nd when such crossis ar borne and put in armys as I said



afore i dymynutyys e W<sup>e</sup> olde any cōm nombre then thay ar  
called in french Crosletys .

**C** More ouer thes is a cros masculatit as here it folowis .

**W**ytte ye Well yit y<sup>e</sup> thes is an othez cros the Wych is call  
led a cros masculatit as here it aperis . And this cros  
is called a cros masculatit fo: he is made of mas  
culps of the Wych certan masculis ye shall se af  
ter: Ward in the chapituz of fuyllis masculit: and  
lospnays Whez this mater shall be mooz playnli  
toet. And he that beis thys armps beis as it  
is shewed here after . first in latyn thus .



**C** portat unam crucem masculatam de argento in campo a  
fereo . Et gallice sic . **C** Il port d'or: ung cros masculit  
d'argent . Anglice sic . **C** He beith asure and a cros mascu  
latit of Syluer .

**C** Also thes is a cros masculatit and perforatit as here .

**B**e it knowe: that thys cros masculatit sum tyme is pfo  
ratit . in the masculps as it is oppn in the persyng he e  
folowpng . And thus ye most blase hym .  
first in latyn in thys wyse . **I**lle portat unam  
crucem masculatam perforatam de auro in scuto  
argenteo . Et gallice sic . **C** Il port d'argent  
ung cros de gullez masculit pfer . Anglice sic .  
**C** He beith Syluer Wyth a cros of golles  
masculatit pferit .



**T** This is a mylneris cross as here it shall be shewed .

**H**ere folowis an other cross the which is cald the cross of  
a milne for hit is made to the similitude of a ston istru-  
ment of yrne in myllys the which beith the mylne  
ston by the which istruement : that ston in his cors  
is borne equally that he welyne not ouer myche  
on the right pte ner on the lefte parte . bot myniste  
spng to eueri parte that : that is his equally  
and with olde fralwe . And thys is geuyn to  
Juges to be in thys armys : and to thos that haue Juris-  
dicion vnder theym . That is to say as the forsayd istruemēt  
is directe : to the mylne ston equalli and with olde gyle .  
So thos Juges ar boundyn to gyffe equalli to eueri man his  
right . And it is to be sayd y<sup>t</sup> the possessor of theis armys beith  
i this wyse . first i latyn thus . **P**ortat unam crucem mol-  
dinarem argenteam in campo rubro . Et iam gallice .



**I**l port goblez song cross moleyne dargent . Anglice .  
**H**e beith gobbles and a mylneris cross of Spluer .

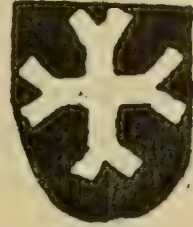
**N**ow it shall be shewed of a cross that is turnyt a gayn .

**A**gain We haue a cross the which is cald a cross turnyt a-  
gayn . and this cross is cald returnyt : for the cause y<sup>t</sup>  
the ends of this cross on eueri side ar returnyt  
agayn bi the maner of a Ramps borne . And  
by that beith theis armys beith i this wyse first in  
latyn thus . **P**ortat unam crucem auream in  
sam in scuto asureo . Gallice sic . **I**l port  
dfor song cross receralee dor . Anglice sic .  
**T**he beith asure with a cross reuersit of golde .



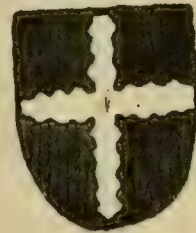
**C** Off a cros forkyd .

**A**nder stande ye that ther be other men the Wich beere in  
 theyr armys a certan forkyd cros as thys is . And hit  
 is called forkyd : for as moch as that all them;  
 dys of hit ar cloun and forkyd . Therfore hit  
 shall be sayd of thys men that berit theys armys  
 in this Whise . primo latine . **P**ortat onam  
 cruce[m] furcatam de auro in campo asereo .  
 Gallice . **I**l port d'asoz onq cros dor .  
 Anglice . **T**he berith a sure With a cros forkyd of golde



**C** Off a cros engraylid oz engradid .

**A**lso ther be certayn nobull men the Wich beere a cros eng:  
 raylid oz engraylid . as it apperis here folowynge And  
 hit is calde a cros engraylid for hit is not pla  
 yne in ony parte of him bot engraylid also Wett  
 ouer his length as ouer his breed . Neuer the  
 lees this engraylyng is no propur langage aftir  
 the sight of thys cros : bot rather an endentyng  
 as tauth is Bot it is the comune maner of spe:  
 kyng in theys armys . Therfore ye most say as I sayd a fore .  
 And ye shall say of him that beris theys armys in thys Wy  
 se . First in latyne thus . **P**ortat onam cruce[m] ingradata[m]  
 de albo in campo rubeo . Et iam Gallice .



**I**l port de gullys onq cros ingrat dargent . Anglice  
**T**he beris golblys and a cros ingrayled of Syluer .

## ¶ Off a cross cutoff .

**F**ynde yet an othyr cross : the Wich is borne many tym ;  
 ys i tharmpys of nobull men . the Wich is calde a cross trun-  
 catid . And hit is calde trunkatid for hit is ma-  
 de of .ii. treys the boys cut a way . as here . Ther-  
 fore it is to be sayd that the possessor of theys ar-  
 mys beris in latine thus . ¶ *Portat conam cru-*  
*cem truncatam de argento in campo rubeo .*  
*Et gallice .* ¶ *Il port de gullez conq cross recoppee*  
*argent . Anglice .* ¶ *The bruth gobles Wich a cross trunca-*  
*tid of Siluer .*



## ¶ Off a knotty cross.

**R**othbe ye yet after theys crossis ther is an other cross the  
 Wich is calde a knotty cross : the Wich i certan is calde so  
 for hit has in euery ende certan knottis . as here .  
 And it is to be sayde of hym that beris theys ar-  
 mys in thys Wpse . Primo latine . *I pse por-*  
*tat conam crucem auream nodulatam i scuto afo-*  
*reo . Et gallice .* ¶ *Il port dasoz conq cross to*  
*tone dor . Anglice .* ¶ *The beris asure Wich*  
*a cross knotty of goode .*



And thys cross is founde other while ppayr or figyure i ar-  
 mys . and then his foote is figyure as I sayd a fore .



¶ Off a cros fluzri knottid .

**O**ver thies crossis We haue a certan cros fluzri of the Bi:  
che it is spokyn a foote . the Wiche cros fluzri is founde  
knotty as here . And that is as I soyd a foote  
Wyan knottys as founde i thendys and the anglis  
of the sayd cros . And the heres of the sayd armys  
latine . ¶ *Portat unam crucem nodulatam flo  
ridam auream in campo de asuro . Et gallice sic*  
¶ *Il port asor unq cros floretez bozone dor .*  
Englice . ¶ The berith asure and a cros fluzri knotty of  
golde .



¶ Off a cros dolbult ptitid .

**A**Cros dolbult is founde in the armys of dyuerse nobull  
men the Wych certan cros is calde a dolbult ptitid cros .  
For if it be duppid or partid after the long Way  
or the brode Way yit ther a bydys on dolbult cros  
as We may se here . Wit I haue seen many no:  
bull men dolbttynq of thys cros moore then of any  
cros a fore said : the wich neuer the lees after long  
disputacioms in thoyppion a foresayd restid and  
concludid . Therefore that beris theys armys . latine sic .  
¶ *Portat unam crucem duplicatam argenteam in campo ni  
gro . Gallice sic .* ¶ *Il port sable unq cros dolble partie dar  
gent . Englice sic .* ¶ The berith Sable and a cros dolble  
partid of Siluer .



## ¶ Off a cros double ptitid florishid

**T**his cros double ptitid is varied sum tims . and then hit is called a cros double partitid florishid . as here . Neuertheles hit is calde a cros fluzi impropuzli as sum men sayen for hit sayliþ the myddys of that florbre as a noon hit shall folow in the next armys . the wich certan myddys by no maner of wyse in that cros double ptitid may be . as a noon it shall be shewed . Bot þe that berith theis armis latine . ¶ *Portat unam crucem duplam ptitam auream in campo rubro . Gallice .* ¶ *Il port de goublez yng cros double ptie floretez dor . Anglice .* ¶ The berith goublez and a cros double ptitid fluzi of golde .



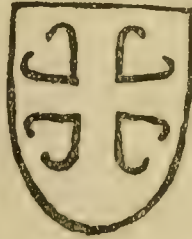
## ¶ Off a cros tripartitid florishid .

**B**ut as is shewed afore this cros is calde a cros double ptitid florishid for thei sayliþ the myddys of the cros by the wich the cros florishid is made pfit . as here hit is oppn . the wich certan myddys putt thei to it shall not be called a cros double ptitid florishid Bot rather it shall be calde a cros threfolde ptitid fluzi . and then it is well blased . for and it be dyuidid after the longnes or after the brodenes . all way oon parte shall a byde triptitid in the myddis of the cros as it is oppn i tharmys afore Britayn . And thefore þe that berith theis armis . latine . ¶ *Portat unā crucē triptitā de azgē° i cāpo de asuro . Gallice .* ¶ *Il port d'aser yng cros trefol pte floretez dargent . Anglice sic .* ¶ The berith of asure with a cros triptitid flouz of Silver .



**¶ Off a mylneris cros shadowyd or ombratid .**

**A** Double theer is yit of a certayn shadow of a mylnerys cros as it shewith here folowynge . And knowe ye that it is called a shadow of a cros for evermore thys shadow is made of blacke coloure . of what sum ever coloure the felde be of . the shadow is made of blacke . and the bodi of the same shadow is of ye same coloure with the felde . **¶** And he that beareth thes armys . latine . *Portat unam crucem ombratam in campo auro .* **¶** Gallice sic . *Il port dor ung cros molegne ombre ,* **¶** Anglice . *The berith of golde with a mylneris cros ombratid or shadowyd .*



**¶ Off a cros floree patent ombratid .**

**A** Nother sampull is sene of the ombraction of a certayn cros . and thys cros is calde a cros floree ombratid as apperith here . but truly spekyng and propuzli . it is no cros : but a shadow of such a cros . and the reson is . for the bodi of the said shadow is of the same coloure with the felde . And so the coloure that is in the felde shewith by all the body of the sayd shadow . **¶** And thoo that beareth thes armys . latine . *Portat unam crucē floridam patentem ombratam in campo rubeo* **¶** Gallice sic . *Il port de gollez ung cros patee floritee ombre* **¶** Anglice sic . *The berith of golde and a cros patent floree ombratyd .*



**C**off a cros flourent sombratid and perforatid.

**N**ever the les after sum men thys shadowd cros other wyse  
 he is persid maruelusly as hit folowith here and than hit  
 is caide a cros flourent sombratid and perso:  
 ratid for hit accordis. With the cros preceding  
 exceptid the persyng in the myddys of the sayd sha  
 dow. **C** And then hit shall be sayd that he the  
 the Biche berith this cros. latine. *Portat pona  
 cruce[m] flourentem patentem sombratam perforatam  
 cum rubio in campo aureo*



**C** Et gallie sic Il port dor oung cros patee flourent sombratid  
 & patee de gobles.

**C** Anglice He berith of golde a cros patent flourent shadowd &  
 persyd With gobles.

**B**asaris moost be Ware of theis armys sombratid of the  
 wich: mony rebles be shewed a fore. **G**ot for the bla:  
 syng of theis certan armys sum ignorant men of thys craft  
 take the rule goyng a fore that is to Wite of the colowris trans:  
 mutid as ye salw a fore **G**ot ther be certan nobles and gentyl:  
 men in englonde the wich beere shadowys diuerse in theyr armys  
 as Lyon Anulop and other. and they that beere theys armys  
 and he be a lyon ye shall sai in latyn **C** *Portat conum leone  
 sombratam in campo aureo* **C** Gallice. Il port dor et oung  
 leon sombratid. **C** Anglice. He berith of golde and a lyon  
 sombratid. **C** And men say that suche psonys as beere theys  
 sombratid armys had there pgenitoris beeryng the same not som  
 bratid bot hole **G**ot the possessiōis & the patrimonyes descended  
 to other men. then the Neuyes or kynnyngs men leuyng in goode  
 hope and trustyng to haue the possessiōis of their pgenitoris:  
 beere theyr armys sombratid. all odes differens a fore said leuig.

for When they haue that patrimony : that thai truste con . soon  
 they may bee that lion or other beest of the same coloure the Be:  
 che theyr progenytous bece . and it is bettre to bee thos armis  
 combrat then wholly to laeff theyr progemtous armys .

**C** With here folowis an odie cros hempt or bordreit as apperis

**A** Gret doubtte yit remaynys a newps blasemis of armys i  
 dyfferens be thys thys cros fimbriatit or bordreit . as he  
 re nobl apperis and the forsayd cros combratit .

in so moch that they ar mpeh like . and it appe;  
 ris in the first sight that they be bot con . bot and  
 a man beholde Well thes is a gret differens . for  
 the bordir of thys cros is variet as Well fro the  
 coloure of the cros as fro the coloure of the felde .



and elles is thes no doubtte . Therefore it shall be sayde of hym  
 that beis theys armys in thys Wyse first in latyn thus .

*Portat onam cruce[m] nigram perforatam floridam patentem  
 fimbriatam siue borduratam cum argento in campo albo .*

*Gallice sic . Cyl port de gullez onq cwois flouettee patee per  
 ee de sabuit bordure dargent . Anglice sic . C The berith gou  
 les With a cros fluzi patent persit of Sable bordreit B<sup>i</sup> Silu .*

Nobl folowis an Ermye cros as it shall be shewyd

**H** Or certan thes is an Ermye cros . & hitt  
 is a meruelus cros of y<sup>e</sup> Wich thes was a di  
 spytacion at london by a certan hercolde of Bre;  
 tan . And it was determynyt that theys armys  
 may be in non other coloure bot as here it apperis  
 And thys cros is calde an Ermye cros . and it



shall be sayd of him that beith theys armys in thys wyse as it  
 shall folow . first in latyn thus . **C**ostat unam crucem e;  
 reminalem . Et gallice sic . **C**yl port ung croys Eremiee  
 Anglice sic **T**he beith a cros ermyne And here ye moost  
 note that the coloure i theys armys shall not be expressit for this  
 cros nez theis armis may not be made bot of theys colouris that  
 is to say allone of blacke and white the which ar the proper colo  
 ris of theys armys .

**S**ufficientli is spokyn of crossis afore . now folowis an odir  
 tretyse of a puerse armys quarteryt as here shall be shewyd .

**O**ff armys quarterit sum ar armis quarterit playn Sum  
 quarterit engradit . Sum quarterit irrasit . Sum quat  
 terit inuechyt . Sum quarterit indentit of the which it shall be  
 spokyn euerich oon after other . and first of tharmys playn

**I**t shall be shewyd first of armys quarterit playn .

**T**hre maner of wyse armys may be quarterit . The first  
 maner is oppn whan . ii . dyuerse armys ar borne quar  
 terli as it is oppn and playn in tharmys of the kynge of Fraun  
 ce & of Englonde And ye shall say of hym  
 y<sup>e</sup> beith theys armys thus as folowys . first  
 i latyn **I**lle portat arma regis Francie &  
 Anglie quarterata . Et gallice sic .

**C**yl port les armes de France et d'angle  
 terre quarteres . Anglice sic . **T**he beith  
 tharmys of France & Englonde quarterli .



And it shall not be tedious to no man that Fraunce is put before Englonde i blaspyng. but the cause is this. for tharmpys of Fraunce in armys be put afore and he haue a genall rule y<sup>e</sup> Whylumeu in armys be. ij. coloures or moe i the poynt of the sheld; & then ye shall not begyn at the poput to blase them. but in the right pte or side of thos armys. that same coloure ther sounde it the right side of y<sup>e</sup> sheld is not the felde of tharmpys. for it mai fortune it is not the gretist coloure i tharmpys afoz sayd but les or With othir equall. and neu the les ye shall begyn to blase ther.

Off armys quartly borne now it shall be sheldyd.

The secūde maner of Wyse of bezyng quarterit armys is When. iii. diuse armys quartly be borne as here is sheldyd And he that beis theys armys: beis. iii. diuse armys quartly. latine sic. Ille portat quatuor arma diuisa quartata. Gallice sic.



Il port quarter armes diusez quarteleez. Anglice sic He beith. iii. armys diuse quartly. And then if it be askyt how theys armys shulde be blasit. The blasers most begyn i the hysle cornell ou the right side pcedyng to euy armys. tharmpys in the right side blasit: ye most go to the odu side & then to the thirde side & afi to the last. And ye most knowb that theys armys vber sit afore be playn armys quarterit.

Ther is an othir man of bezyng of armys quartit When ij armys quarterit be borne quartly. and it is borne most i armys of quengys and so bare that noble quene of Englonde quene Anna Wyse to that wyallt prince Kyng Richard the secunde: the Wiche bare tharmpys of Englonde & of Fraunce and of thempoz of All mayn quartly & m. ptes. that is to say in the right side of

the shelde in the first quarter she bare the arms of france. iij. flo  
 reducis of golde i a felde of asure. & i the secunde quart. iij. Li  
 bartis of golde i a felde of gobles. & i y<sup>e</sup> thirde quart an Eagle  
 splayd w<sup>th</sup>. ij. neckis. & i the. iij. a blake Lyon rampyng i a fel  
 de of Silu. and so chaungeably she bare theys arms m. pvi.  
 quarters the Wichfeldyn is seen in any arms.

**O**ff arms quarterit and engrayl't nob shall be shewyt

**N**ow I shew yow y<sup>e</sup> sum tyme we haue arms quarterit &  
 engraylit. that is to witte whan euery armys i his quart is  
 engraylit as hys apperis. & it shall be sayd of him  
 y<sup>e</sup> beis theis army thus. first i latyn **P**ortat de auro & rubio arma quarteriata & ingra;  
 data. Et gallice sic. **P**ort dor et goblez  
 quartlee engraylee. Anglice sic **T**he berith  
 of golde & gobles quartery engraylit. And thei  
 ar cald armys engraylit for they ar made of. ij. colouris the Wich  
 graditly ar broght to gedir on colour m to an other colour



**O**ff arms quaterit and irasyt nob I will speke.

**C**ertain arms the be quarterit and irasit  
 as hys apperis. the Wich ctm arms ar cal  
 led quarterit armys irasit. for the colouris be ra;  
 sit owt as oon colour i raspyng Ware take alway  
 from an othe. And it shall be sayd of him y<sup>e</sup> be;  
 ris theis armys m latyn thus. **P**ortat arma  
 quarteriata irasa de albo & nigro. Gallice sic  
 d'argent et Sable quartlee irase. Anglice sic. **T**he beris  
 Siluer and Sable quarterly irasyt.



**P**ort  
**T**he beris



Off armys quarterit murechyt now here it shall be shewyd .

There be yet folownde armys quartli murechyt . or as sum men say they be armys quarterit of colobris murechyt as here apperis . the Wich for soth ar calde armys quarterit iuctat or of colobris murechyt . for i them ar .ij. colours quartli put : y<sup>e</sup> soon i to the othir . & so on colobris is iuchit i to an othir . Therefore it is said of hi y<sup>e</sup> beris theis armys i this wise first i latyn thus **I**lle portat quarteriatum de asurio et auro iuctatis **E**t gallice sic . **I**l port quartli veire asor et dor . **A**nglice sic . **T**he berith quartli murechyt of asure and golde .



Now of armys quarterit indentit it shall here be shewyd .

Quarterit armys be founde diuerse the Wich ar calde indentit as here apperis : and they ar calde indentit for .ij. colobris soon in to an othir by the maner of teth ar indentit : as is oppn i the shelds . And thus ye shall blase theym first in latyn . **P**ortat asma quarteriata indenta ; sa de rubro et auro . **G**allice sic . **I**l port quarteritlee indentit de gobles et dor . **A**nglice . **T**he berith quartli indentit of gobles and golde .



Off armys partit aftir the long Bay here shall be shewyd .

**I**ntende now to detemyn of armys partit aftir the longe Bay the Wich can parting aftir the long Bay or on length is made many maner of wyse . **T**he first pticion for soth is

of .ij. colouris in armys after the long Way in the playne man

**C** Ther is also a ptyng of armys of .ij. colouris ingradyt .

**C** And also ther is a ptyng of .ij. colouris irrasit .

**C** Also forsoth ther is a parting of .ij. colouris mueckyt .

**C** And ther is an othir parting of .ij. colouris endentit .

**C** Ther is also a ptyng of .ij. colouris clobdit or nbulatit .

**C** And moze ouer ther is a ptyng of .ij. colouris Watery .

**R**ysit I shewyd to you that ther be certan armys partie  
after the long Way of .ij. colouris in the playn Way as  
here apperis i theys armys . And they ar calde  
part armys for they be made of .ij. colouris equal  
li partit . And he that beis theis armys beis th9  
i latyn . *Ille portat arma partita plana secun;*  
*dum longum de asorio et albo . Gallice sic .*



**C** Il port d'asor et d'argent playn ptee . Angli  
ce sic . He beith asur and Syluer playn partit .

**C** Off armys partit the long Way ingraypt I Witt shew here

**A**lso ther is pteion of armys engraypt the long Way as is  
said a fore bi engraylyng of .ij. colouris to gediz as here  
apperis . And theys armys ar calde armys en;  
graypt part after the long Way of siluer and Sa  
ble . And it shall be sayd of him that beith thes  
armys i latyn thus . *Portat arma partita secun;*  
*dum longum ingradata de argento et nigro . Gal;*  
*lice sic* **C** Il port d'argent ingraylee et Sable p;  
tee du long . Anglice sic He beith Syluer and Sable in;  
graypt part after the long Way .



ere nobl it shall be shewyt of a myns partit and irrasit

The thrid maner of Wyse ar founde armys partit of .ij. co:  
Colours & irrasit as here. of the Wich it is to be sayd: as  
afore of quartecit armys irrasit. And he that  
beis theys armys: beis in this Wyse as folowys  
firse in latyn thus. *Portat arma pita secundū  
longum irrasa de argento et rubio. Gallice sic.*  
*Il port ptee du long dargent et de goblez raze*  
*Anglice sic.* The beith armys partit on  
length of Siluer and gobles irrasit.



Off armys ptit the long Bay and inuechyt nobl & Witt speke

Also the fourth maner of Wyse: armys partit as borne af  
ter the longe Bay of .ij. colouris inuechyt as here apperis  
And theis armys be calde inuechyt for the colour  
is be put oon in to an othir on rounde Wyse.  
And theys armys differ moch fro tharmys next  
beyng afore irrasit. Wherefore it shall be sayd of  
hym the Wich beis theys armys thus as it shall  
folow firse in latyn thus. *Ipsē portat arma  
partita secundum longum de coloribus albo et rubio inuectis*  
*Gallice sic.* *Il port partes verre du long dargent et de*  
*goblez.* *Anglice sic.* The beith partit inuechyt on lengthe  
of Siluer and gobles.



Off armys partit on the long Bay & indentyt he it is shewyd

**S**otheli an othis maner of partyt armys ther is the Bi  
che is calde the fyfthe maner partyt after the long Bay  
of .ii. colouris and theys armys ar called partyt  
indentyt . for thys cause that .ij. diuse colobris  
ar put to gethis : that is to say White and blac  
ar put to ged aft the man of menis ethe as it  
is sayd afore in the quarterit armys indentyt.  
And therfore ye shall say of hym the Wich beis  
theys armys in thys Wyse . first in latyn thus . *Portat ar  
ma partita secundum longum de argento et nigro indentata .*  
*Gallice sic . Il port partee indentee du long d'argent & sable*  
*Et anglice sic .* The beith armys ptit indentat on length  
of Syluer and Sable .



Off armys partyt aft the long Bay clowdy or nebulatyd .

**I**n the sept man of Wyse ther be armys borne partyt aft  
the long Bay nebulatyt as here it shall be shewyd in this  
flockon . And theys armys be calde in nebulatyd  
for .ij. colobris ar put to gedre by the manere of  
clowdys . Therfore the possessor of theys armys be  
we in thys Wyse as it shall be sayd first i latyn  
thus . *Portat arma partita secundum longum  
de argento et auro in nebulata . Et gallica sic .*  
*Il port ptie du long d'argent & d'or in nebulatye .*  
*Anglice sic .* The beith armys partyt on length of Sil  
uer and a sure in nebulatyt .



Off armys ptyt Water of Syluer and gobles this schoon is

**M**ore ouer aft theys armys afore sayd pit thez be to: is  
armys partyt after the longe Way . and they be Water as  
here in this schoon it apperith . and theys armis  
ar calde Water: for .ij. colobus ar incariet oon  
m to an other by the maner of Water trobulde W<sup>e</sup>  
Bynde . And ye shall say of him that betis theis  
armys m thys Wyse as folowys: first in latyn .



**C**Portat arma ptyta ondoza secundum longu  
de argento et rubio . Gallice sic . **C**Il port ptice du long  
argent et de goblez ondee . Et anglice sic . **C**The beath  
armys partyt the long Way of Syluer and gobles Water

Now here I begynne to speke of armys partyt ouerwart :

**H**ere now folowys to se of armys ptyt ouerwart . the  
Which certan partaon ouerwart is made as many Wyse  
as is the ptyaon on length . that is to say on the playn Way  
ouerwart . ingraypt . irasit . muectyt . indentit . innebula:  
tit . and Water . Wherefore of theys certayn  
shall be sheldyd by signys . and first I begynne  
at playn armys ouerwart . as here it shall be sh  
lyd . And it shall be sayd of hym that beuthe  
theys army m thys Wyse first in latyn thus .



**C**Portat arma partita extransuso plana de au  
ro e auro . Et gallice sic . **C**Il port ptice transusie dor e  
dor . Anglice sic . He beath golde and asure ptyt ouerwart  
**C**Knaw ye that here is no colbe of that first rule: that is  
to say that a man shall begyn at the poynt of the shelde to blase  
for here is as mych coloure of golde as of asure .

**A** Off armes irrasit oulbarit nobb here it shall be shewyd .

**N**obb of a nobbize maner of partycion of colouris in armes oulbarite I will speke . And it is cald irrasit as here it shall appere in this scochion . of the Wich it is to be sayd that the gentyll man the Wich beas theys armes beas in this maner as folowis . first in latyn thus . **P**ortat arma partita extransuso irrasa de auro et rubio . Et gallice sic . **I**l port partice transuersse irrase dor et goblez . Anglice sic . **T**he beith armes partyt oulbarit irrasyt of golde and gobles .



**N**obb of armes partyt oulbarit ye shall haue an exemple .

**A**rmes ther be also identyd oulbarit and partyt . And they be cald indentyd for theyre colouris as is sayd afore as put comyn to an othir by the maner of menims tethe . And it shall be sayd of him that beas theys armes in this wyse first in latyn thus . **P**ortat arma partita extransuso indentata de auro et asorio as afore is rehersit . Et gallice sic . **I**l port partice de traucers dor et asor endenter . Anglice sic **T**he beith armes partyt oulbarite indentyt of golde and asure



**A**nd to reherse moore of partyt armes oulbarite it needis not for it is rehersyt sufficientli in the rules next afore in armes partyt on lengthe . Therefore it shall not be rehersyt here agayn . quia inutilis est repeticio vnus ad eundem . and that is to say

It is an vnprofitabull rehersyng of oon thyng to reherse the saame  
 a gayn in the next sentans . Therefore to speke moore of armys  
 ys portit and figure theym : othez of mgytlyt oz irrasit mucc  
 byt indentit nebulatyt and condatyt : it nedys not . for they  
 be taght sufficiently i the long Bay . ¶ And I beleue it shall  
 be hard to fynde mony moo armys ptyt afti the long Bay oz ou  
 wart then az rehersit a fore Neū the lees if any be founde or se  
 ne . in theym the same rules shall be obseruēt : as is rehersit a  
 fore . and it is enogh for all armys on that man to be blasit  
 that any gentyll man birth ptyt .

Off armys the Rich az cald cheiff oz an hede I Will shewe .

**S**otheli certan men holde : y<sup>e</sup> theys armys after rehersitt  
 schulde be cald armys ptyt . the Rich certanli 12 2 for y<sup>e</sup> :  
 that thez is no verti plicion of the coloutis oz any liclenes of  
 dyuisiō of coloutis . Certanly in armys ptyt it  
 is requyrit alway that the ptyes of the coloutis  
 be equall . and that is not trew in this figure .  
 for the moore pte by mych is Siluer . Therefore  
 ye shall say of hem that beuis theys armys the  
 first in latyn . ¶ Portat de argento et caput  
 fultide asorio cū duabus maculis pforatis de auro . Gallice  
 sic . ¶ Il port argent long cheiff d'or et deux molettis  
 ptes dor . Et anglice sic . ¶ He beuith Siluer a Cheff oz  
 a Chescan of asure and ij. molettys pforat of golde .



**A**nd ye shall know that i theys armys the rule afore bre  
 tyn most be considerit that is to say : that at the Coon it is to  
 begyn to blase if that coloure of the Coon be gretter or more co  
 ppous coloure in armys as it is sayd afore **A**nd more ouer  
 it is to be merktyt that no armis albe to be calde ptyt armis to e  
 ff they be made of .n. colouris onys partit and no more for ar;  
 mys palit ar not callit : nor albe not to be calde partyt armys  
 alt thogh they be made of .ij. colouris for thes colouris not al;  
 lonk onys bot dyuerse tymys ar partyt as here aperis **A**nd  
 theys armys be calde palit armys for they be ma  
 de bi the man of palis. **A**nd it shall be sayd of  
 hym that beis theys armys i latyn thus. **P**or  
 tal arma palata de auro et asorio . **G**allice sic .  
**A**l port pale dor et asor . **A**nglice sic .  
**T**he berith pale of golde and asure .



**O**ff armys palit conditit now here it shall be shewyt .

**P**alyt armys of tyme ar founde conditit that is to say  
 watter as here aperis . **A**nd theys be calde palyt ar;  
 mys conditit to the differance of barrit armys  
 conditit . the Wich armys barrit may also be con  
 ditit as after shall be shewyt . **A**nd it shall be  
 sayd of him that beis theys armys thus in latyn  
**P**ortat arma palata condita vel condita de rubro  
 et argēto . **E**t gallice sic . **A**l port palee  
 condē de goblez et argent . **E**t anglice sic . **T**he berith  
 paly conditit of gobles and Siluer .





¶ Off armys palit crokyt and sharpe nob 3 Bitt speke .

**L**ike and beholde how many maner of Wyse thes palit ar ;  
mys be borne dyuerseli . as it is shewyt in thys toke .  
and theis armys nob shewyt here : be calde palit  
crokyt and sharpe . for in theys armys . ii . colo ;  
ris paly ar put to gethir : on in to an othir cro ;  
kylly and sharpe . Therefore it shall be sayd of hi  
the Wich beis thes armys in thys Wyse . first i la ;  
syn thus . ¶ *Portat arma palata tortuosa acu*  
*ta de nigro et argento . Gallice sic .* ¶ *Il port pale d'ainsete*  
*de Sable et d'argent . Anglice sic .* ¶ The beith pale crokyt  
and sharpe of Sable and Syluer .



¶ Off armys barrit playn nob here it shall be shewyt .

**H**ere i thys chappure afore is determynyt of palit armys  
and in thys chappure nob folowynge it shall be deter ;  
mynyt of barrit armys . for the Wich it shall be knowl that ar ;  
mys may be many maner of Wyse barrit . and  
the first maner of Wyse is playn barrit . as here  
appereis . And ye shall knowl that ther be certan  
armys barrit playn . and then ye shall nott nede  
to say i the blasynge of theys armys : by beith pla  
yne armys barrit . Bot i all othyr disperynge ar ;  
mys barrit : ye most nedys declare the blasynge of thym holbe  
thous barrit armys differ from playn . for su be barrit W<sup>c</sup> a  
Lyon raumpynge or a grehonde or odir beestis e su be barrit e



pollerit With cres crosettyes molettyes Scesentis smale briddis  
 oz other difference bot as for theys playn armis afore ye shal  
 say in latyn in thys Wyse. **P**ortat arma barrata de argento & ni;  
 gro Et gallice sic. **A** Il port barre argent et Sale.  
 Anglice sic. **A** He berith barri of Siluer and Sable

**A**ff barrit armys pondatit nob 3 Wyll shew as apperith.

**R**nalb ye for ctan that armys barrit othis Wile ve barrit &  
 pondatit that is to say Wateri. as here it apperith. And  
 they be called barrit pondatit for they be made of .ij. colouris me  
 tynge to gedre by the maner of a floyng Watre as  
 it is oppn afore. And ye shalt say of hym that  
 beris theis armys i this Wyse. first i latyn thus  
**P**ortat arma barrata pondata de nigro et albo  
 Gallice sic. **A** Il port barre pondee de Sable  
 et argent. Anglice sic. **A** He beris barri pon  
 datit of Sable and Siluer.



**A**ff armys barrit and mueckyt ye shal haue exemple  
**B**arrit armys mueckyt ar borne of diuerse gentilt men.  
 as here is shewyd. And thay ar called mueckyt for in  
 eueri barre .ij. colouris ar put mueckyt by the ma  
 ner of a rounde Way as is sayd afore. And he y<sup>e</sup>  
 beris this armys beris in thys Wyse. first in la;  
 tyn thus. **P**ortat arma barrata de coloribus  
 rubro et albo muectis. Et gallice sic.



**A** Il port barri verree de goblez et argent.  
 Anglice sic. **A** He berith barri mueckyt of gobles and Sil  
 uer.  
**A** And I begyn With gobles for that coloure is the  
 first in the right cornett.

Off armys barryt crokpt and sharpe as here aft is shewid.

**G**entill men thez be certanli the Wich bere armis barrit crokpt and sharpe as here it apperith in theys armys . and thay be called armys barrit for differance of armys the same man of Wyse palat : and thay be called crokpt and sharpe . for as it is sayd a fore . ij . colouris az put to gethyr crokptli and sharpe .

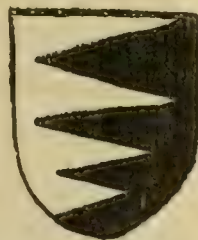
Therefore it shall be sayd that the lord the Wich be us theys armys berith in this Wyse . first i latyn



**I**lle portat arma baritata tortuosa et acuta de nigro et auro .  
**E**t gallice sic **C**il port barri dauncetes acute de Sable et dor  
**A**nglice sic . **T**he berith barrit crokpt and sharpe of Sable and golde .

Now it shall be shewid of armys that as bendly barryt .

**T**hez be forsothe certan armys bendli barrit . and thei be called bendly barrit . and for this cause they be cald bendly barrit . for . ij . colouris az iunyt to gether in euey barre bendly . as it is oppn here i theis armis  
**A**nd therefore it shall be sayd of him that beris theis armys : in this Wyse as folowis . first in latyn thus . **C**il portat arma bendata de rubio et auro . **E**t gallice sic . **C**il port barre bendee de goblez et dor . **A**nglice sic . **T**he berith barre bendy of Goblez and golde .



**W**ot neuer the lees ye most dyligentli attende in the blasynge of sych armys : as palyt barrit and bendyt . for and they ben not suttelly consaunt a man sodanty onseruynge may lightly in thoos armys be dissapuyt . for certainly thoos armys be callede palyt armys in the which ar folowde so many palys of oon colowre as ar of an other . And iff the palys of bothe the colowris ben not equall thoos armys be not palyt .

**I**n diuerse armys of gentill men be folowde . ii . palis of oon colowre . and . iij . of an other as here in theis armys folowynge it shall be shewed . that is to say the be . iij . palys of golles and . ii . of golde for of the colowre of reede aperith . iij . partes in the shelde and bot ii . allone of the colowre of golde Therefore the gentill man that berith theis armys : beris i this wyse e thus ye shall say of him . first in latyn thus .

*Portat duos palos aureos in campo rubro . Et gallice sic .*

*Il port de golbles et deux pales dor . Et anglia sic .*

He berith golblis and . ii . palis of golde .



Here ye shall diligently merke armys barrit and lees barrit .

**T**he most also dilygently attende to the nombre of both too colowris in armys palyt barrit or lees barrit of the which littyll barrits ye most be ware when they be folowde in armys . as here it is shewyd in theis armys . for sych lynes be called littyll barrits to the difference of littyll barrits . And it shall be sayde that the gentill man the which berith theis armys beris in this wyse first in latyn thus as folowis



**P**ortat unam bartram et duas baculas de albo in campo rubio . Et gallice sic . **I**l port de gobblez unq barree et deux barrelettes d'argent . Et anglice sic . **T**he brith gobbles on barre and .ij. litell barris of Syluer .

**N**ow I wyll speke of armys barrid a litell barris florishyt

**H**old the forsayd litell barris as othyr wyse made florishyngli & than they be calde florishyt as here i thys scochon . And they be calde florishyt : for they be made by y<sup>e</sup> maner of a florice deluce . And ye shall say of him that is possessor of theys armys i thys wyse as folowys . first in latyn thus . **P**ortat unam bartram et duas baculas floridas albas in scuto siue campo blodio . Gallice sic . **I**l port dasoz unq barree et deux barrelettes florid d'argent . Anglice sic . **H**e brith asure on bar and .ij. litell barris florishyt of Syluer .



**N**ow I intende to speke of bendys in armys as here .

**O**thyr wyse they is borne in armys a bende as is founde i dyuerse armys of certan noble gentylmen as here now it shall be shewyd . And ye moost knawe that it is calde a bende the wich begynnys at the right corner or the borne of the shelde : and descendith to y<sup>e</sup> lesse side of the same sheelde : to the differans of fif fures or of litell scaups of the wich it shall be spoliyn after . And of hym that has theys armys ye shall say thus as folowys . first in latyn . **P**ortat unam



bendam de rubio in campo aureo . Gallice sic . ¶ I port  
 dor song bende de gblez . Anglice sic . ¶ He both golde e  
 a bende of gobles .

¶ Off lifell bendys in armys now here is an exempull .

**R** Now ye hold afore it is sayd that certan litlett barris ar  
 ar borne i armys mony tymys . On the same maner of Wise  
 ar borne litlett bendys as here it shall be shewyt . And they be  
 calde bendylls to the differans of grete bendys  
 as it is oppn . And of hym that becis thes thy  
 it shall be sayd . first in latyn as here folowys .

Portat unam bendam ⁊ duas bendulas de auro  
 i campo blodeo . Et gallice sic . ¶ I port asoz  
 song bendy et deux bendelettis dor . Anglice sic .



He berith asure a bende and .ij. bendils of golde . And thes  
 bendyls ar othirwys florishyt as is shewyt in the figure a fore  
 in barris . And in diuse armys they be founde that they be  
 chenyd . and sum be polderit with molettis . and sum with odit  
 dyfferans the wich nedys not to be figurit here

¶ Off armys palit and bendyt now here it shall be shewyd

**T** He best maner of wyse certanly of beryng of wyse ar  
 mps in con sheldes is in thes bendys bering for a man  
 that has a patrimony left by his fadyr . and o  
 ther certan londys by his modyr cumyng to him  
 to the wich londys of his moderis ar appropuzt  
 armys of olde tyme for it may hap that thes  
 armys worn to hir by the way and descent of hir  
 progenyturis . then may the hapre and hym list



here the boott armys of his fadyr in y<sup>r</sup> boott sheldre . And i speke  
 a bende he may here his moderis armys as here in the scochon after  
 appearis . And it shall be sayd of him that bevis theys armys in  
 latyn thus . **P**ortat arma palata de argento et tubo cum sona  
 bende de nigro . Gallice sic . **I**l port palee d'argent et de gold  
 les et sonz bende de sabutt . Anglice sic . **H**e beith palee of  
 Sylver and gobles With a bende of sabutt .

**A**nd othyr wyse i speke a bende ther is founde . iij . moletye  
 or maples of golde .

**O**f armys bende fusillit here noth I Wilt expomull .

**W**ere ou ther be founde in armys othez certan bendys to su  
 man strange from theys . and here I Wilt sheld to you a  
 bende the Wich is calde a bnde fusillit : as here ap  
 peith in this scochon . And it is calde fusillit for  
 it is made all of fusillis of the Wich certan fusillis  
 more shall be spokyn aftward . Soe be the Wich  
 has theys armys bevis in latyn thus . **P**ortat  
 sonam bentam fusillatam de auro in campo asorio  
 Gallice sic . **I**l port asor sonz bende fusillee dor .  
 Anglice sic . **T**he beith asur a bnde fusillit of golde .



**A**nd thys bende many tynge is founde Wich strangeris and  
 specialli in Burgon .

Here now it shall be spoken of diverse bordures in arms.

**B**ordures many and diverse as founde in arms and as be:  
 One of many nobilitie men & of the which sum be playn. sum in  
 graffit. sum tennat. sum playn polidreit. sum chekerit. sum  
 gobonettit. sum muercheit. of the which it shall be spoken euery  
 oon after order. And first of playne bordure I will speke as  
 here it apperis. And the bordure is cald playne

When it is made playn of oon coloure aloon. as  
 here in this scochon. And it shall be sayd of hym  
 that is possessor of thes arms first in latyn thus

**P**rotat tres rosas rubias in campo argenteo  
 cum una bordura de rubio. Et gallice sic.

**I**l port argent trois roses de goulez et ung bordure de go  
 bles. Et anglie sic **T**he beith Siluer. iij. roses of gold  
 les and a bordure of gobles.



**O**f arms bordure and ingraffit now here folowys example

**A**rms with a bordure ingraffit other while as borne of  
 certain nobilitie men as here now is shewit in this scochon.

And speke a bordure is cald a bordure ingraffit  
 for the coloure of hym is put gre by gre in to the  
 felde of the arms as it is oppn here. And the pos  
 sessor of thes arms beis in latyn tong thus as  
 folowys. **P**rotat arma de auro symbriata si  
 ue bordurata de nigro ingradata cum tubus macu

lis perforatis de nigro. Gallice sic. **I**l port dor trois mul  
 lettis perforates de Sable ung bordure ingraffee de Sable.  
 Anglice sic. **T**he beith gold. iij. molettis perforat of Sa  
 bulle and a bordure ingraffit of Sabull.





**R**ow of armys bordreit and talentit 3 With sheld example .

**T**her is borne in armys a certan bordure talentit as here .  
 And it is not necessari here to expres the coloure of the ta;  
 tentis or besantis : for thay be euer of golde .

And is shall be sayd of him that beis thes armis  
 in thys wyse first in latyn thus . **P**ortat ro;  
 num signum capitale de rubis in campo albo bordu  
 ritum cum rubio talentatum . Gallice sic .



**I**l port d'argent un cheuron de goullez bordu;  
 re de goullez talentee . Et angluce sic . **T**he beith siluer a  
 Cheuron of goulles bordurit With goulles talentyt .

**O**ff armys bordurit hauyng .ij. Cheurons of siluer &c .

**A**nd stonde ye that certan tymys a bordure is borne in ar  
 mys polidreit dyuerse ways othez wyse With molettis With  
 rosis or With lityll cossis or With besantis or othez wyse . And  
 it is calde a bordure polidreit When any thyng is i  
 that bordure : of What sumeu signe it be . as it  
 is sayd a fore . and theys signys as rosis molettis  
 and othez ar not countit for c'tan nombur : for y<sup>e</sup>  
 nombur of that polidreynge exceedis the nombur of  
 w And then y<sup>e</sup> bordure is calde polidreit as here .



And ye shall say that the possessor of thes armys beis in this  
 wyse as folowys . first in latyn thus . **P**ortat unum feu;

tum de cubio cum duobus signis capitalibus de albo et gona bor-  
 duca pulvisota cum talentis . Et gallice sic . **C** Il port de  
 gobles deup Cheverons argent et ung bordure de gobles polb ;  
 drie talentee . Anglice sic . **H**e berith gobles . ij . Cheverons  
 of Spluer and a bordure polberit with besantis .

**C** Wit thez is an othez maner bordure that is calde Chekerit .

**W**e have pit an othez bordure in armys the Wich is calde a  
 bordure chekerit . And it is calde a chekerit bordure  
 for hit is made of . ij . colobris by the maner of a Cheker as  
 hce it aperis . And it shall be sayd of hym the Wich was the  
 ys armys in this Wyse as folowys . first in la-  
 tyn thus . **P**ortat unam cruce[m] rubiam pla-  
 nam i campo argenteo cum gona bordura scaccata  
 de nigro et argento . Et gallice sic . **I**l port  
 argent ung croys plagn de gobles borduree chek-  
 kee de Sable et argent . Et anglie sic .



**H**e berith Siluer on croys plagn of gobles a bordure chekke-  
 at with Sabull i Siluer .

**O**ff borduris gobonatif nolt here is an exempull .

**R**Now ye more ou that pit by side theys armys the Wich  
 have spoke of a fewe B' borduris : thez is an othez bor-  
 that is calde a bordure gobonatif . as here it shall be shewyt i  
 thes fosehon nept folowpng . And hit is calde gobonatyt for

hit is made of ij. colouris quadrati iopnyl. p<sup>r</sup> is  
to say of blacke & White . p<sup>r</sup> of hym that beis

thys armys ye shall say in latyn thus as folowis  
¶ Portat de argento p<sup>r</sup> duas bandas de nigro et

una bordura de nigro et albo gobonata . Et gal  
lice sic . ¶ Il port argent deux bandes et une

bordure de sable et argent Anglice sic . ¶ The beath siluer  
ij bandys of Sable With a bordure gobonate of Sable & siluer



¶ And thys same bordure haue that nobill prynce the duke  
of Gloucestyr brothyrs to that nobill Beriolbre Kyng henci the  
fifth : the which sayll duke haue in his armys the holl armys of  
Fraunce and of Englund quartly With a bordure gobonate of  
Siluer and sable as is shewyd in diuise places . And to blase  
thys armys it nedis not to be rebysit . for it is sufficiently  
taght afore in diuise places .

¶ Item of borduris had in armys of colouris murekpt .

¶ Ther be yit borduris i armys of ij. colouris  
murekpt . as here in thys figure appe;

ris . and hit is calde a bordure murekpt for hit

is made of .ij. colouris to gedys murekpt . And

ye shall say of hym the which berith theys armys

in latyn thus . Portat arma quarta ta de rubio

et auro cum tota bordura de argento et nigro simul murectis .

Et gallice sic . ¶ Il port quartee de goblez et dor ouesq<sup>s</sup>



long bordure verme dargent et de sable . Anglice sic

**T**he beith quartrly goldes and golde With a bordure muelz  
lyt of siluer and sable .

**B**ott i thes borduris ther is a grete differens emög men  
ppretendpng theym expte and Wpse in thys sciens as spe:  
cially it is oppn i tharmpis in olde tyme of theire of Marche Wchd  
they shulde be calde borduris or not . as here i thys  
figure . And certan men say y' men not puttyng  
a mezuelles differans of blaspyng say : that the for  
sajd Erie of marche the Wiche Wos calde Roger  
Mortememer Wch that he leuyd bare armpis in la  
tyn in thys Wpse to say **T** Fortauit arma pla  
ta barrata et contraconata de auro z auro cum uno simplici scuto  
de argento . Gallice sic . **T** Il port pale barree gironne d'or z  
d'or et long escu simple dargent . Anglice sic . **T** The beith pa  
ly barri contrari conpt of a fure z golde With a siple shelde of silu .



**A**nd this oppnyon afore rehersit in the blaspyng plesyt ma:  
ny a man the Wch in no man of Whise may be trw . For if thes  
armpis as it is sayd afore **T**at contrari conatit . then the labyste  
corner or the coone of tharmpis that is to say the labyste poynt of  
the shelde may neu be of con colowre as certanly it is of a fure .

**O**ver theys thngys afore rehersit in thes armpis it is clon  
that in all armpis contrari conpt all the conys of What sum eu co  
lowre tharmpis be made they mete to geoye conally in the middis  
of the shelde . as in the next figure of the shelde oppulyt it shall

be shewyd. Wherfore as it appereth to my reson (wiche they shal  
 be blasit on this wyse: exceptit the greates autorite that the for  
 sayd Erie of Marche hath thus in latyn. **P**ortauit arma  
 barrato et caput scuti palatum et angulatum de auro et auo cum  
 quodam scuto simplicia de argento. **E**t gallice sic. **I**l port  
 barree et ung Cheff palee aineate d'or et d'oz et ung escu simple  
 argent. **E**t anglice sic. **T**he barth barri and a Cheff pa  
 le angulatel of aure and gold With a simple sheld of Silu.

**O**ff arms contrari conyt here I will informe you

**T**her be yet for sooth diuerse noble men the which haue arms  
 contrari conyt. as here in this fechon apperith. And  
 thes arms be cald contrari conyt for this cause.  
 for all the colouris of thes arms meete to gedyr  
 at one coone. that is to say at the myddylt poynt  
 of the sheld only. For euery body triangulit is  
 moore of lengthe then of bryde and naamly conyt  
 not p3. Therefore the oppnyon of thos men the wh  
 che sayd that the arms afore wryt: that is to wryte of the  
 les arms of Marche Bar palte barrit and contrari conyt is to  
 be receypt. for so mych that the conys of the forsayd arms



acorde not the Rich of necessite shulde acorde iff the forsayd opp  
 nyon her tith. And of hym that beas theys armys ye shall  
 say in latyn. **P**ortas arma contrasonata de blodio et albo  
**E**t gallice sic. **I**l port givone d'asoz et d'argent. **A**nglice sic.  
**H**e beith contrax conyt of asure and siluer.

**O**ff pile armys now here it shall be shewyd :

**H**oz as mych as it is spokyn afore of armys : in the Rich  
 the colobris mete to gedys in the myddist poynt conly.  
 Now folowyth of certan armys in the Rich iij. pi:  
 lis mete to gedys in con coone. as here in thys fi:  
 gure. And it shall be sayd of hym the Rich be:  
 as theys armys in latyn in thys wyse.

**C**portas tres pilas nigras in campo auro.

Gallice sic. **I**l port dor tres piles de sable.

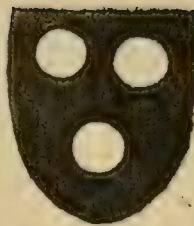
**E**t anglice sic. **C** The beith gold. iij. pilis of sable



**O**ff ballis in armys here now it shall be shewyd.

**N**ever the les ye most consydre a differans i theys blasyn  
 Rys of theys armys afore : and theys that cum after  
 Ben ye blase theym in latyn tong. for other While thys terme  
 pila i latyn is take for to be a peece of tymbre to be put vnder the  
 paloz of a bryge : or to fyche a like worke as i thepempull afore  
 And odyr While this terme pila is take for a certan rounde istru  
 met to play w<sup>ch</sup> : the Rich istru met fups othes While to the bande

and then it is cald i latyn pila manualis as here  
 And other While it is an instrument for the foote  
 and then it is cald in latyn pila pedalis a foete bal  
 Therfor it shall be sayd of hym that beris thes ar  
 mps in latyn **P**ortat tres pilas argenteas  
 in campo rubio . Et gallice sic . **¶** Il port de  
 goblez trois pelettis d'argent . Et anglie sic . **¶** He berith  
 gobles .ij. ballis of Siluer .



**O**f Stanlye most merke that i this figure of ballis a mā  
 may soon er . Before shortly it is to be know that sich  
 ballis may haue all coloures but the coloure of golde for e ther  
 be of goldyn colouris : they shulde be cald talentis or besantis the  
 Wiche be eu of golden coloure .

**O**ff tortellys or litill Cakys in armys .

**T**hes be also tortellis y<sup>e</sup> be litill Cakys  
 the Wiche be grettir then ballys e tharmys  
 be truly made as here it is oppn . And he that be  
 ris thes armys beris in this Wyse first i latyn .

**¶** Portat tres tortellas rubias i campo aureo .  
 Gallice sic . **¶** Il port dor et trois torteulp de  
 goblez . Et anglie sic . **¶** He berith golde e .ij. Cakys of  
 gobles .



**M**ore ouer merke : that as Wele ballys in armys as kakis  
 and besantis all Way as hoost wounde figuris e not pforat

**O**ff fontans or Bellis here I will speke .

**N**eu the les thes be can nobult men the Wiche ber sich wounde fi  
 guris : the Wiche figuris as cald fontans or Bellis as here ap

eris . the Wich fontans eūmore most be of Whyte  
coloure for the thynge the Wich they represent .

For they represent eūmore the coloure of the Wa  
ter of a Well the Wich is white And of hym y<sup>e</sup>  
beis thes armys ye most say in latyn thus .

Portat tres fontes i campo aureo . Gallice sic

**I**l port dor et trois fonteyns . Anglice sic .

**T**he beith  
of golde and . iij . Bellis .



**O**ff ryngys the Wich be other rounde instrumentis **I** Witt speke

**A**fter theis wordes figuris a fore reherst  
Ather be cian figuris the Wich be yforatit as  
be ryngys : as here apperis . And it shall be sayd  
of hym that beis theis armys i latyn th9 .

Portat tres anulos aureos i campo nigro . Gallice  
sic **I**l port de sable et trois anulettis dor . An  
glice sic .

**T**he beith Sabutt and . iij . ryngys of golde

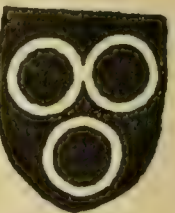
**O**ff tractys in armys .

**A**fore it is sayd of borduris i armys . now it folowith to  
se of tractis or lynys . and first of a symple tract . and  
they be calde tractis for as mych as the felde remay  
nyng of tharmys as Bele With i as With olde . e  
an other lyne is dralbyn of an other coloure as  
here : to the man of a shelde . And it shall be sayd  
of hym that beis thes armys i latyn .

Portat  
vnu tractū simplicem planam aureū i campo aoreo

Gallice sic . **T**l port dor vng trace playn dor .

**T**he beith asure a playn tract of golde .

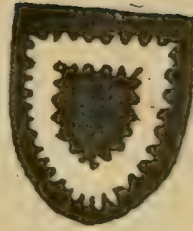


**O**ff a tract engraynt on both the sydes here is an exemple .

**A** tract or a lyne othis While is engraynt on both the pa  
tes as here in thys figure apperith . And then it shall



be sayd of hym that beris theys armys i thys wyse  
 first in latyn thus . **P**ortat sonum tractu  
 ex utraque parte i graduum de auro i campo rubro  
 Et gallice sic . **I**l port de goblez unq trace  
 engraple de chescim coste dor . Anglice sic .  
**H**e berith gobles wyth a tract engraple on bo  
 bth the sydes of golde .



**O**ff a tract wolbult and flourishyt it shall be shewyt .

**T**hys tract is othez wyse wolbult as in the armys of the  
 kynge of Scottelonde . as here in this scochon apperis . &  
 the forsayd kynge of Scottelond beris i thys wyse  
 first in latyn thus . **P**ortat duplicem trac  
 tum cum floribus gladioli contraposis et uno  
 leone rapaci de rubro in campo auro . Et galli  
 ce sic . **I**l port dor unq wolble trace florette  
 countree et unq leon rampant de goblez . An  
 glice sic . **T**he berith golde a wolble trace flourishyt contrari  
 and a Lyon rampyng of gobles .



**O**ff tractis triplait and quatrilait othez wyse .

**A**lso of theys armys afore rehysit . I fynde more dyuersite  
 for ther be certan nobull men the which bere theys tractis  
 triplait as here in thys fygyure . and sum bere hit  
 quatrilait as is founde i diuise armis . And ye  
 shall say of hym that beris theys armys triplait  
 i latyn thus . **P**ortat tractum triplicatu de al  
 bo i campo auro . Gallice sic . **I**l port dor unq  
 trace triple dargent . Anglice sic . **T**he be  
 rith golde a trace triplait of siluer .



Off a tract sympullt of .ij. coloris and muechyt an exemple

There be other nobill men the which have a simpullt tract of .ij. coloris muechyt as here now it shall be shewyt in this scochon . And the possessor of theys arms beis in this wyse as folowis first in latyn . **P**ortat unum tractum simplicem de coloribus auro et argento muctis in scuto aureo . Et gallice sic . **U**n port dor vng trace simple verme dor et argent Anglice sic . **T**he beath gold and a tract symple muechyt of aure and Siluer .



After tractis now it shall be spokyn of fyssuris or staups .

Before theys fyssuris it is spokyn of bendys : and their differans . Now it shall be spokyn of fyssuris . the wych cōtan fyssuris or staups begynne in the lefte horne of the sheld : & ar drawne to the right parte of the sheld beneath to the differance of bendys the wych begynne in the right horne of the sheld & ar drawne to the lefte side of the sheld beneath . and this way most the fyssure be drawne as here apperis i this fygure . And ye shall vnderstonde that theis fyssuris differ as many ways as the forsayd bendys differyt . but it nedys not to be rehersyt for it is playn shewyt afore . There be fyssuris or staups playn . mgydpt . muechyt . and susyllatit . as I sayd afore in the place of bendys . And theys staups bastardys ar wont to be called thay shulde be called thaym . And then this fyssure is called a staffe : & i french it is called a taston



Bot commynli it is calde a fissure for as mych that he cleuyes his faders armys in .ij. partes for that bastard is clouyn and deuydpt from the patrimony of his fader . And so sych a bastard is forbedyn to bere the hoost armys of his fader for the reuerance of his blode . bot his faders armys he may bere with sych a staffe as is sayd afore : in signe and finall declaracon of his bastardy and to the differance of propur and naturall boyre of his fader . And when ye haue any sych a playn fissure or a staffe i armys or ingraylit mueckyt or fusillatit : of that some staffe ye shall say as a fore is rehersit in the chapiture of bandys moore playnli . And the bastarde the which berith theys armys possessis in latyn on thys maner as nobl hys folowys .

**P**ortat unam fissuram sine baculum aureum i campo a forio .

**C**alluce sic . **I**l port afor et vng fees dor . **A**nglice sic .

**A** he berith a fure and a fissure or a staffe of golde .

**N**obl hys I begynne to speke of armys hedyd as it aperis .

**T**her be certan nobull men the which bere armys hedit as here it aperith . And ye most knalb that theis armys be cal led hedyt : when the hys parte of the shelde that is to say the hys is made of con coloure or of moo then of con . & that parte extendys not to the myddis of the shelde as aboon is sheldyt by the shelde .

And knibe ye that in the hedyt armys is a good man of berynge of dyuse armys as by fortune sū noble man has mony londis and grette lordshypys by his mo: dyr for the which londys of his moderis he mtendys to bere the armys of his modys . and so he may do for it is rightwys .



Bot he that descendys of a nobull fadyr or of a gentill man .  
by the Wyche he had any simple patrimony . then sych a nobull  
man : and he Witt : may bere the holl armys of his moodyr in  
the labyr parte of his shelds . and in sych an hede as I sayd  
a fore he may and he Witt bere the holl armys of his fadyr

And it shall be sayd of hym that beas theys armys i thys Wy  
se first in latyn thus . **P**ortat unum signum capitale de ni  
gro in campo aureo cum uno capite rubro et tribus talentis i eo  
dem . Et gallice sic . **I** port dor ung cheuon de Sabull  
et ung Cheff de goblez et trois besantis en la mesmes .

Anglice sic . **T**he berith golde a cheuon of Sabull W<sup>t</sup>  
a Cheff of gobles and .ij. besantis thez in .

**A**nd ther be certan nobull psones the wich ber in the shel  
de afore wher sit of golde as is sayd a fore a Cheuon of Sa  
bull or of sum odyr coloure and .ij. rede wosis or Whyte or sum  
other sygnys as crossis cressantis braddys or floubrys and a che  
ff sum of Sabull sum of othez coloure with the signe of molet  
tis or odez tokyngng the wich need not to be wher sit . And then  
shall euerich oon of theym be blasit in his nombur like as the  
felde and the signes require : as by fortune sum men bere thus  
to say . The berith Sabull a Cheuon of golde .ij. rede wosys  
of gobles a Cheff of asure with .ij. molettys perforatit of vert  
and thus of all othez differansys .

**O**ff armys palit with oon quarter of an othez coloure .

**C**ertainly ther be sum nobull men the wich bere in thez ar  
mys oon quarter of an othez coloure dyfferyng from the

coloure or the colobris of the shelde as here . in the  
 Wich armis it is to be sayd that the nobult man the  
 Wich betis thym betith in this Wyse first in latyn .



**P**ortat arma palata de aserio & auro cum una  
 quarta eremetica . Et gallice sic . **I**l port  
 pale d'asoz et dor vng quart d'ermyn . Et anglice  
 sic . **H**e betith pale asoz and golde With con quart of Ermyne .

**A**nd it is to be notit that ye most haue a respekt to the co  
 loure of that pale the Wich shulde ascende to the right borne of the  
 shelde iff that quarter be not ther . and i that coloure ye most  
 eu moore begyn to blase thooz armys like as the quart be not  
 ther as afor is requisit .

**N**ow of armys chekerit here ye shall haue an exemple .

**O**ver other Whye we se armys chekerit as here now  
 it apperith in thys figure folowynge and they be cald ar;  
 mys chekerit Whyn they ar made of .ij. colouris to  
 the maner of a cheker . And theys armys resay;  
 ue many differens as in hodes or quarters i bar  
 ris and bendis and other doyles i Cheurons of ye  
 Wich it shall be spokyn anon folowng . And of  
 hym the Wich possessis theys armys ye shall say in  
 latyn thus . **P**ortat arma kakkata de aserio et auro . Et  
 gallice sic . **I**l port kakkate d'asoz et dor . **A**nglice sic .  
**T**he betith Cheker of a fure and golde



Off Chuewons the Wich i engllsh az calde colbpuils of sparris

**W**E haue sotheli in armys certan signys the Wich az calde Chuewons in french . And they be calde m latyn Signa capitalia vel tigna . and in engllsh a colbpuilt of sparris as here is sheldyd i theys signes : the Wich signes by likenes first was borne of carpentaries and makers of howses . for an howse is neu made p fite tyll thos sparris be put a pon hit : by the maner of an hede . and .ij. syche sparris or chuewons ionyt to gedyz make a capitall sygne . y<sup>e</sup> is to say a colbpuilt of sparris . and other While . ij. syche be borne i armys and othyz While . iij. odyz While . iiii . as it is knalbyn . And of him that beris theys armys afore ye shall say thus as folowys first i latyn . **P**ortat de rubio et duo signa capitalia de auro c. i. tribus talentis . Et gallice sic . **P**ort de golbz et deux Chuewons dor et trois talenti . Anglice sic . **T**he berith golles and .ij. Chuewons of golde Wich iij besantis .



Off a Chuewron or a sygne capitall engraplyt here is sheldyt .

**A**lso a Chuewron is othiz While engraplyt as here and then it is to be sayd of hym the Wich beris theys armys m latyn m thys wyse . **P**ortat unum signum capitale in gradatum de albo m campo a foveo . Et gallice sic . **P**ort alsoz unng Chuewron argent engraplee . Anglice sic . **T**he berith a fure and a Chuewron of Spluz engraplyt .



**O**ff dyuerse and meruelus Cheucons yit 3 Witt speke .

**W**oe ouer yit i theys signys of Cheucons other While is folowde a wolbe in the blas yng of theym . Wlen thei be moe de of dyuerse colobris transmutat as here in this frochon aperith . And of hym the Wyck beris thes armys ye shall say in latyn . **P**ortat arma quarternata de nigro et argento cum uno signo capitali de dictis coloribus transmutatis . Gallice sic . **I**l port quarternes de sable et argent et ung Cheucon changee lung de laultre . Anglice sic . **T**he be ; rith quarterly Sable and Siluer With a Cheucon of the sayd colobris transmutat .



**O**ff Cheueucons differ yng on the longe Way :

**A**lso theys signes or Cheucons be different after the longe Way in armys as here in this figure aperith . And then of hym the Wyck beris thes armys ye shall say in lati . **P**ortat arma partata secundu logu de coloribus auro et rubro cum uno signo capitali de dictis coloribus transmutatis . Gallice sic .

**I**l port partie du long de dor et goblez ung cheucon changee lung de laultre . Anglice sic .

**T**he beuth party aft the longe Way of .ij. colouris golde and goules With a Cheucon of the sayd colobris transmutat .



**O**ff colbtis emong heroddis i blas yng theys armys sup yng

**A**mong othyr colbtis : a wolbe the blas yng of tharmis here folow yng nob next 3 haue hade heroddis pretend yng

theym selfe w<sup>er</sup> conyng in blaspyng of armys mer  
 uelusi to dreeme in the blaspyng of theys armys .  
 And sum holde oon oppnyon and sum an othyr .  
 neuer the les it is no goute neede to dolbe in the  
 blaspyng of theym as to conyng men . Therefore  
 of hym y<sup>e</sup> beis thes armys ye shall say i latyn .



**P**ortat duas ptes capitis scuti de rubio & iciam ptem de albo ad  
 modum sigm capitalis et tres rosas de coloribus transmutatis .  
 Et gallice sic . **U** port lez deux pties du chief de goblez et le  
 troisieme d'argent ptiez en manere du cheueron et trois roses lung  
 de laulte . Anglice sic . **H**e beith .ij. parties of the heade of the  
 shelde gobles and the thirde pte Siluer by the maner of a che  
 ueron and .iij. roses of the same coloribus transmutit .

**O**ff armys fusillit in english spynnyllis nobl J Will speke .

**T**her be certan gentylmen and nobuls the Wich beere in theyr  
 armys fusellis : of the nombur of the Wich : my lord of  
 Glaucestur y<sup>e</sup> nobull prince uncle to kynge henri the sept Was .  
 For he had in his armys .iij. fusillis of gobles by the maner of a  
 bar in a felde of silues the Wich etan armys this  
 nobull duke bare by the reson of certan londis be ;  
 longyng to the mounte . Bot ye shall say of hym  
 that beis theys armys i this scochon in latyn th<sup>9</sup>



**P**ortat de rubio et tres fusulos de argento .  
 Et gallice sic . **I** l port de goblez et trois fusules  
 d'argent . Anglice sic . **H**e beith gobles and .iij. fusules  
 of Siluer . **A**nd other whyle theys .iij. fusules or .iij. be borne  
 by the maner of a pale .



It is to be notit that Whm. iij fusules or. ij. ar borne or moe to the nombur of .ij. the Wich nombur if thei excede: say euermore that thos armys be polderit With fusillis or other thynngys and noon othyr Wyse . ¶ And so generalli ye most know that iff any thng be borne in armys ouer the nombur of .ij. then thoos armys What sum euer they be thay ar polderit .

Off oon fusyll borne in armys here I Will expenult.

Other While con fusyll is borne allon in armys as here i thys figure it apperith. in Wich mater I haue had certan heroddis wolte in theyr oppnyonys . Neu the lees it is can that ye shall say of hym the Wich beis theys armys With ooble wolte i latyn thus as so: *Portat de rubio cum cono fusulo de auro Et gallice sic.* Il port de goblez conq fusill or Anglice sic . ¶ The beith gobles and a fusill of golde .



Off an fusyll of dyuerse colobris now here I Will speeke .

Also theys fusyllis sum tyme ar borne of dyuerse colobris As here in thys figure it is shewyd . Not it is a moore wolte how theys armys shulde be blasit then thar: mys afore . Not ye shall say i latyn of hym the Wy che has thes armys in this Wyse . *Portat arma partita ex transuerso de albo et nigro cum cono fusulo ex eisdem coloribus transmutatis.* Et gallice sic . Il port partie de trauers d'argent et sable et conq fusyll de mesmes colours lung de laultre . Et anglice sic



**H**e beith armys partit ouerwart of Siluer & sable With a fusyllt of the saam colobour transmutit.

**O**ff fusyllis by the maner of a bende here 3 Will sūbat say .

**M**ore ouer sych fusyllis ar borne in armys by the maner of a bende . as here nobl apperith And then ye shall say of hym the Wich possessis theys armys in this Wyse first in latyn thus . **P**ortat unam bendam fusillatam de auro in campo rubeo . Et gallice sic **I**l port de goblez ong bende fusyllt dor . Et analice sic . **T**he beith gobles and a bende fusyllit of golde .



**O**ff a bar fusyllit in armys here is an exemple .

**A**lso thez be borne in armys theys fusyllis in a bar fusyllit as here it apperith . And then it is to be sayd of hym the Wich hath theys armys in latyn thus . **P**ortat de rubio cum una barra fusillata de argento . Gallice sic . **I**l port de goblez ong barre fusulle dargent . Et anglice sic . **T**he beith gobles and a bar fusyllit of Siluer . And sum men say that the forsayd armys began of Beueris for as mych as Beueris use sich fusyllis made of sponnyng Wolt



**K**nowe ye y<sup>e</sup> differans betwix fusillis Masculis & Losyngz

**N**ow here ye shall knowe the differans betwix fusillis masculis and losyngys . Wherfore it is to be knowe that

fusyllis ar euez more long also fusyllis ar strattyr ouerwart in  
 the baly then ar Mascules . And Mascules ar larger ouerwart  
 in the baly : and shorter in length then be fusyllis . as here i this  
 scochon it apperith . And it shall be sayd of hym  
 that possessis theys armys in this Wyse . first i la  
 tyn . **P**ortat de rubio q sep masculas de auro .  
 Et gallice sic . **I**l port de goubles et .vi. mascu  
 les dor : Et anglie sic . **T**he beath goubles  
 and sep masculas of golde .



**A**nd theys masculas other While ar pforatit as I sayd ofore  
 in the chapitour of the cros masculatit .

**O**ff an othyr maner of masculas yit here I Will speke .

**A**lso other While ar borne armys masculatit as here now  
 in this figure folowynge is shewyd . And ye shall un  
 derstande that thos armys be calde masculatit in  
 the which the forsayd masculas begyn most plentif  
 ly in the right angle of the sheld . and as endid  
 toward the lefte pte . the which certan armys in up  
 deed ar palit . q ar deuydit i to .iij. palyes yf thei be  
 subtile consapuyt . And of hym that beuis theys  
 armys it shall be sayd i this Wyse first in latyn . **P**ortat ar  
 ma masculata de argento q asorio . Et gallice sic  
 dargent et dor masculas . Et anglie sic . **T**he beath  
 of Silues and asure masculatit .



## Off losyngys hyls and What maner of Wyse they be made .

**A**lso losyngye no maner of Wyse be made bot i armys ben dit . nei they may not be made by the selfe . and they be made att Way as thrys be made bendit . And ye shall haue the moost percey differans by thys the forsayd masculatit armys and bendid m the picturis of the forsayd armys . And ye most take thys for a generatt enformacion and instruccion thatt certanli losyngy eumore stande vpright : that is to say that the hystt poynt or the hight : eu ascendis to haue or to a mainpe bred . so that the hystt poynt extendys vtrarily to the bred of the shelde . and of the ouerwart corneris oon extendis vtrarily to the right side . and that other corner extendys to the left side of the shelde . and the lawist parte extendys to the lawist parte of the shelde dyametrallit as it is oppn m the shelde next a fore . And so Wich olde doctre we haue the differans of the forsayd signes . that is to Wete of Mascules and Losynges . Nota also the forsayd susyllus neuer be founde pforatit nei losyngys afore sayd be neu pforatit .



**K**nowlde of a signe i armys y<sup>e</sup> is calde a Saltori a man of a cros

**T**her is an other maner of signe m armys : by dyuse nobullt men borne : the Wich is calde a Saltori . and it is made by the man of a cros of Saynt andrew as here now it aperith . And thys cros is licke kynt after certan men to an instrument made m dyuerse parkys the Wich is of a grete magnytude or largenes : to the comparison of thys signe . And it is Well knowlde of nobullt gentelmen and



hunneris that spch saltatories az ordant in mony p:thys e pla  
 as to take Wilde beestys the Wich onys their enterynge : by thatt  
 instrumete may neu goo a geyn . Wherfore in olde tyme thes  
 signys Were geuyn to rich men . and othe:lyse calde auaris  
 Nygonyes oz keperis the Wich men suffiz not their tresures i What  
 maner of Wyse they be getyn : to passe from theym . And of  
 hym the Wich possessis theys armys ye shall say in latyn . Por  
 tat de asotto et conum saltatorium de auro . Et gallice sic .

**I** l port d'asoz conq saultiere dor . Et anglie sic . **T** He  
 berith asure and a Saltory or a salber of golde .

**O**ff armys saltire engradit here I Will exemplat .

**H** Old here ye most knaw that theys armys Saltire is :  
 ther While engradit as here in thys figure nobl apperith  
 And they they be adde saltire engradit as it is  
 sayd afore in mony placis . as of the cros engradit  
 of baris and bendys . And of hym that beris  
 theys armys ye shall say in latyn . Por tat co  
 num saltatorium engradatum de auro in campo a  
 soto . Et gallice sic . **I** l port d'asoz conq saul  
 tier dor engradit . Et anglie sic . **T** He berith asure and  
 a cros saltire of golde engradit .



**O**ff many crossis saltire borne in armys engradit an exemple

**O**ther While they be borne mony crossis saltire i armys en  
 gradit in oon shelde . other While . ij . other While . iij . as

here . And of hym that beris theys armys thus  
 it shall be sayd in latyn . **P**ortat conam bar  
 ram planam et tria saltatoria mgradata de auro i  
 campo rubro . Et gallice sic **¶** Il port de golb;  
 lez long barre playn et trois saultiers engreilez dor  
 Et anglice sic . **H**e berith golbles oon bar playn  
 and iij . saltre crossis engradpt of golde .



**O**ff Crowns in armys borne by the maner of a pale .

**I**t is diligentli to be markyd that When We say sich a lor  
 de berith in sych spynys . How theys . iij . signes ar bor  
 ne in armys We say not all Way . For other While theys . iij .  
 signes ar put in a shelde by the maner of a pale . And then ther  
 be calde signes palit . as here i thys figure it ap  
 perith . And of hym that has theys armys ye  
 shall say in latyn . **P**ortat iij . coronas de auro  
 palatas in campo asorio . Et gallice sic . **I**l  
 port d'asoz et trois corones dor palees . Anglice sic  
**H**e berith asure and iij . crowns of golde palit .



**O**ff crowns in armys borne barrit here I Witt informe yow

**H**ow theys . iij . signes othre While be bor  
 ne barrit here now apperith in thys figure .  
 And then of hym that beris theys armys ye shall  
 say in latyn . **P**ortat tres coronas aureas i  
 campo asorio . Et gallice sic . **¶** Il port d'asoz  
 et et trois corones barrez dor . Et anglice sic .  
**¶** He berith asure & iij . crowns of golde barrit .



Off. iij. Crowns borne in the Corneris of the shelde .

**C**ertainly theys: iij crowns be borne i the most comyn Way  
 in the corneris of the shelde as here in thys scochon it ap  
 perith . And then ye most thus say that thes . iij  
 signes be borne in the corneris of the shelde . for  
 that is the most comune & the moost famust maner  
 of beynge of thes . iij signes or ani maner signes  
 Therfore ye shall say that sych a lord beith i la  
 tyn in thys Wyse as here folowys . **C**portat  
 de asoro et tres coronas aureas . non expremendo loca . Et  
 gallice sic . **C**Il port de asor et trois corones dor . Et angli  
 ce sic . **C**He beith asure and . iij crowns of golde .



Off fithys borne in armys in dyuse Wyse here is a doctrine

**A**neth doubtle yit is founde in armys . for as mych as ther  
 was a certan man that heght Petrus de cupibus in tyme  
 passit the bisshop of Wynchester : thes Wyche baar i his armys iij  
 Rochys after hys owne naam in Wyche armys it is doctit .  
 Whether it is enogh to say in the blasynge of them : that he bare  
 sych iij fithys allone . as here in thys scochon .  
 And certanly I thynke nay . for the rule goynge  
 a fore . Soe it is thus to be sayd : of the sayd  
 Petrus in latyn . **C**portant tres huiusmodi  
 pisces argenteos natantes in campo nigro . Et  
 gallice sic . **C**Il port de Sable et trois Ro  
 ches nāpantz argent . Et anglice sic . **C**He beith Sable  
 and in Roches slymmynge of Siluer .



And then to tharmys of Galfrede lury as  
 here now apperis i this figure And ye most say y<sup>t</sup>  
 he bare thus in latyn . **P**ortant tres lucios  
 aureos in campo rubeo . Et gallica sic . **I**  
 port de gobles et trois lucez dor . Anglice sic .



The berith gobles and iij lucee of golde .  
 the Wich certan blasping With olte declaracion here is enogh .  
 for the sayd fishes ar in thare propur placis as I sayd in the  
 rule afore .

Bot What shall be sayd of thys man then : the  
 Wich beris .ij. barbellis turnyng theyr backys to  
 geder as here apperis . Ye most say in latyn thys



**P**ortat duos barbillos aureos adinuicem i  
 ga uertentes in futo asorio puluerisato cu cruci  
 bus cruciatis figituris de auro . Et gallice sic .

I port asoz pudree dz crosps crocelez fichez et deuy bar;  
 bulp dzs an dzs dor . Et anglice sic . The berith asure  
 powderit With crossis crosletys pycche and .ij. barbellis of golde  
 backe to backe .

Off armys the Wich ar calde frectis here now I Wyll speke .

**A** Certan nobull baron that is to say the lorde alldely of  
 the Reame of Englonde bear in his armys a frecte .  
 the Wich certan frectis i mony armys of dyuerse gentill men ar  
 founde . othez While reede othez While golde . and othez While  
 blac othez While simple andz othez While double othez While trespitt



and other While it is multepliet ou all the sheld  
 as here it apperith . and ye most vnderstande on  
 gret differans by thys armys bendit and theis  
 armys the Wich be made With the forsayd frettye  
 Wherefore it is to be markyt that m bendyt armys  
 the colouris contenynt equally ar dyuydit . Bot i  
 thes frettis the felde alwai abydyt wolt as here . and this for  
 sayd lorde audeley berie thus m latyn . **C** Portat arma frec  
 tata de auro m campo rubeo . Et gallice sic . **I**l por de gold  
 lez song frecte dor . Anglice sic . **C** He berith gobles and  
 a frecte of golde .



### Off armys haupng beestis salpentyng or rampyng .

**B**estis in tharmys of dyuerse nobult ar borne rampyng  
 as here i thys figure solowpnyng apperith . of the Wich i the  
 toke afore I haue made no mencion . And of  
 hym that is possessor of theys armys ye shall  
 say i latyn . **C** Portat de rubio q onum leo  
 nem de argento . Et gallice sic . **C** Il port  
 de goblez song Leon saliantz argent . Et an  
 glice sic . **C** He berith gobles q a lion ram  
 pyng of siluer . And he is calde a Lion rampyng for thys cau  
 se . for as mych as the right foote ascendyth to the right borne  
 of the shelde . and the lefte foote descendyth in to the foote of the  
 shelde as apperith i the figure . And this same man is obseruyt  
 m all beestis haupng .iii. feete . that is to say m lions leopar  
 dis beestis doggis With othez like to them .



**C**off armys barrit and of labellis borne in armys .

**F**irst note Well tharmys of the fadyr as he  
 be . and then the differancis as it shall  
 be shewyd . for certan thez be dyuse nobult men y<sup>e</sup>  
 Wich bere labellis in theyr armys as it shall be  
 shewyd i figure after . for the Wich it is to be kna  
 we that sych labellis ar not propuzli calde signes  
 in armys bot dyfferancis of signes . that W<sup>h</sup>en it is so : that a  
 ny nobult man haue mony lesult getyn sonnys : then y<sup>e</sup> first son  
 the Wich is his faderis ayre : shall bere the hoolt  
 armys of his fadyr With sum lyttle differans as  
 here . to Whom specialli is geuyn a moon encre ;  
 syng . for that first son is in hoipe of augmen  
 tacion and encreffyng of his patrimony . & thys  
 differans may be sum littill molet oz a cros croslet  
 oz sych alike differans .



**T**he secunde broder shall bere the hoolt armys  
 of his fader With . iij . labellis to the differans and  
 in to the signe that he is the thurde that beris thof  
 armys . **A**lso the thurde broder if ther be any  
 shall bere . iij . labellis i tokyn that he is the fou  
 rth : that berith thos armys of Whom the fader is  
 the first . the ayre is the secunde . and the secunde broder is y<sup>e</sup>  
 thurde : that beris thos armys . And so folow  
 ys that the thurde broder shall bere . iij . labellis  
 as here it apperith in thys figure . And so for  
 the iff ther be moo brether ye shall encree yowre  
 labellys after the forme afore velysyt .



**A**nd the sunys of thos same brether shall bere the same  
 labelis . **A**nd i case that the secunde brother the Wich bereth  
 iij. labelis haue .ij. sonnys certanly thelder soon of thos .ij. the  
 Wich is wyre to his fadyr shall bere the hoolt ar-  
 mys of his fadyr : With also many labelys as  
 his fadyr did . With a littel differans as here it  
 appeith in thys scochon . **A**nd hys secunde  
 brodyr shall bere the hoolt armys of hys fadyr  
 With the same labellis as his fadyr baare and  
 no moo With a bordure as here in thys figure next folowynge  
 it shall be shewyt . and as it is rehersit in the cha-  
 piture of borduris .



**A**nd iff ther be the thyrde brodyr then he shall  
 bere hys faders armys With the same labellis  
 and a bordure of an other coloure to the differans  
 of hys brothyr as it shall be shewyt i thys scochon next fuyng

**A**nd the chylde of thos men shall bere  
 theyr dyfferans not in theyr faders armys , but  
 in borduris and dyspysionys dysuse .



**A**nd like as the chylde of the secunde bro-  
 dyr bezyng iij. labellis ar dyspysyt and dyfferit : by thes sig-  
 nys and theyr borduris . So the chylde of the thyrde broder be-  
 zzyng .iiii. labellis : bere the same armys that theye fader did &  
 also mony labellis . And they ar dyfferit by theyr signys and  
 theyr borduris as afore is rehersit : and dysuse othyr . as oer  
 While a Lyon rampyng on parte reed an othor blakke .

**N**ow certainly of all the signys the Wich ar founde i armys  
as of flouoris leups and other meruellys tokenys I can  
not declare here : ther be so mony . Bot ye shall know general  
ly that for all tharmys the Wich lyghtly any man has seen i his  
days : ye haue rules sufficient as I be leue . to dyscerne and bla  
se any of theym : and it be so that ye be not in yolbre mynde to  
hasty or to sloyste in the dyscernyng . Nes ye may not oueryn  
folytly the forsayd rules . bot dyligently haue theym in yolbre  
mynde . and be not to full of consartis . For he that Witt hunt  
ii havis i oon olbre : or oon While oon . an other While an other  
lyghtly be losys both . Therefore take hede to the rules . If so be  
that they be not a generall doctrine : yet shall thai profete for  
thys sciens gretly .

Merke ye Wele theys questionys here now folowynge .

**B**ut now to a question I Witt procede . and that is thys  
Whethyr tharmys of the grauntyng of a prynce or of o  
ther wyds as better or of sych dignyte : as armys of a manis  
propur auctorite take . Wher that it is lefult to eueri nobult  
man to take to hym armys at his plesure . For the Wich questi  
on it is to be know that .iii . maner of Wyse We haue armys

**T**he first maner of Wyse We haue olbre albre armis the Wi  
che We beer of olbre fadyr or of olbre moodyr or of olbre predy  
cesessoris . the Wych maner of beynge is comune and famos in  
the Wych I Witt not stonde long . for that maner is best puyt

**T**he secunde maner We haue armys by olbre merittys as  
wey playnly it apperith by the addicion of tharmys of Fraunce  
to tharmys of Englonde getyn by that moost nobult man prync  
ce Edward the first getyn sone of Kynge Edward the thirde p<sup>t</sup>  
tyme Kynge of Englonde after the takynge of Kynge John of  
Fraunce i the batell of Hestres . The Wich certan addicion Was  
lesult and rightwysli down . and on the saame maner of Whise  
myght a poore archer haue take a pryncce or sum nobult lord . &  
so tharmys of that pryncer : by hym so take rightwisly he may  
put to hym and to his hertis .

**O**n the thirde maner of Whise We haue armys the Wich We  
weere by the grauntynge of a pryncce or of sum othez lordys .

**A**nd ye most knall that thos armys the Wich We haue of  
the grauntynge of a pryncce or of a lord resayue no question Why  
that he weere thos same . for Whi the pryncce Wylt not : that sich  
a question be askyt . Whi he gaue to any man sych an armys as  
it is playn in the labbe of nature and Ciuyll . For that same  
that pleses thez pryncce has the strength of labbe . wt if any mā  
baue thos armys afore . for that thynge the Wich is myne With  
a rightwys tityll With olbre deseruyng may not be take frome .  
ner the pryncce may not do hit rightwisly .

**T**he fourith maner of Whise We haue thos armys the Wich  
we take on olbre albre pur auctorite . as in theys days open  
ly We se . how many poore men by thair grace fauoure laboure  
or deseruyng : ar made nobuls . Sum by thez prynces . Sum  
bi thez māns . sum bi thez strength . sum bi thez conig . sum bi od itayns

And of theys men mony by theyz alone auctorite haue take ar-  
mys to be borne to theym and to ther bayris of Whom it nedys  
not here to rehearse p<sup>e</sup> namys . Neū the leas armys that be so taken  
they may lefully and frely beer . Bot yit they be not of so greete  
dignyte and auctorite as thos armys the Wich az graunte d<sup>e</sup> day  
by day by the auctorite of a pryuce oz of a lorde . Yet armys bi  
a mannyes propr auctorite take : if an othez man haue not to  
ne theym afoze : be of strength enogh .

¶ And it is the oppnyon of moni men that an herod of armis  
may g<sup>u</sup>e armys . Bot I say if any sych armys be borne by a  
ny herod g<sup>u</sup>yn that thos armys be of no more auctorite then  
thos armys the Wich be take by a mannyes alone auctorite .

¶ Explicit .

¶ Here in this boke afoze ar conteynt the bolys of hauyng  
and huntynge Wich othez plesuris dyuerse as in the boke apperis  
and also of Cootarmutis a nobull Werke . And here nob en-  
dyth the boke of blasynge of armys translatyd and compyt<sup>e</sup> to  
gedyz at Seynt albons the yere from thincarnacion of olde  
lorde Ihu Crist . M . CCCC . lxxxvi .

¶ Hic finis diuſoꝝ genofis valde ſtiliſi ſot ituctibꝝ ptebe

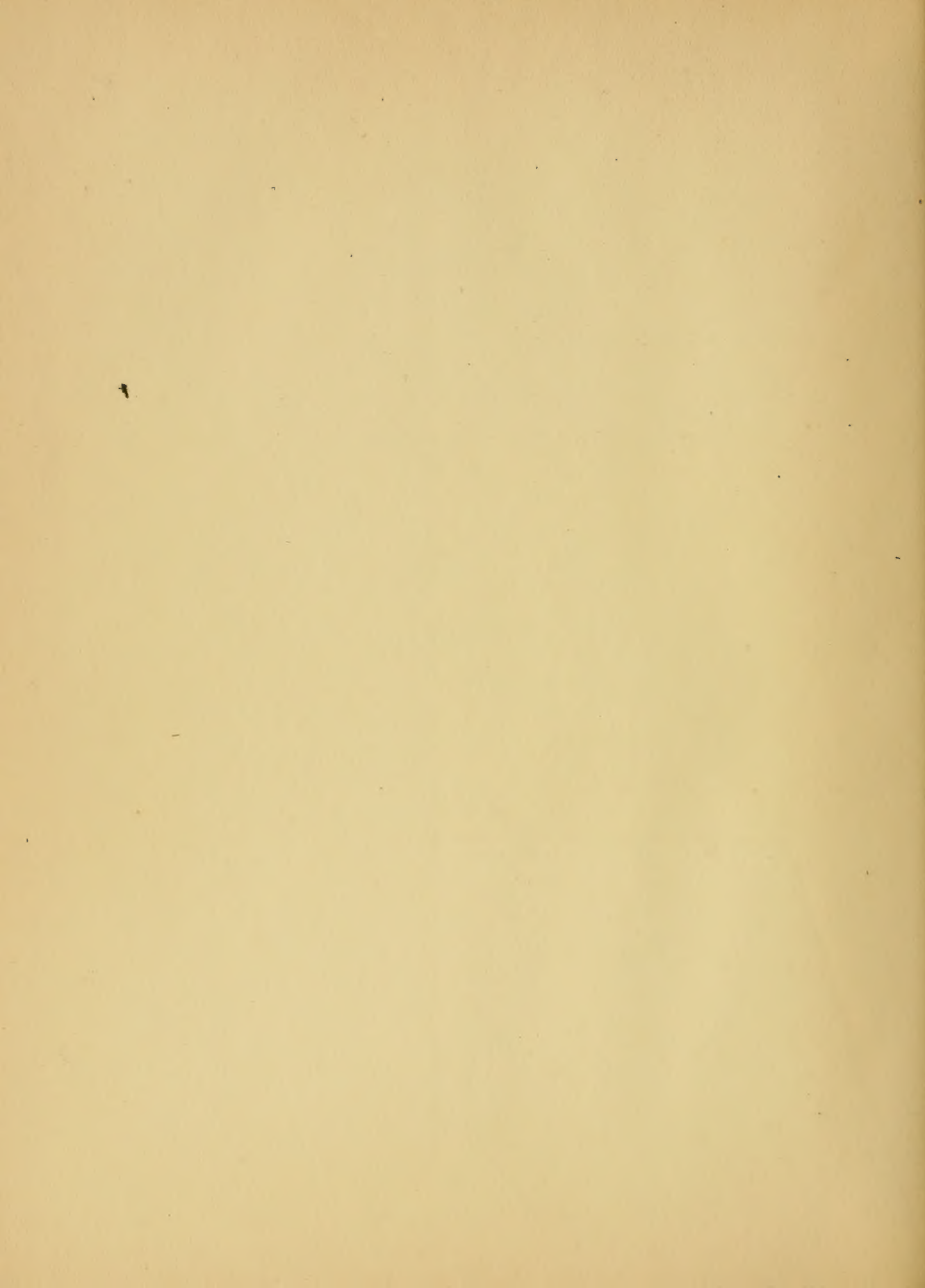


¶ Sanctus albanus:









1/2

